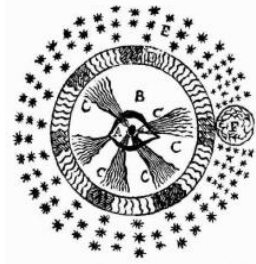


---

Created: 11/10/2012  
Revised: 3/18/2025

JANE



LEAD

A  
FOUNTAIN  
OF  
Gardens:

---

Volume 3

---

A SPIRITUAL DIARY  
FOR THE YEAR 1678

---

**Spirit's Day Version**

With Modern Language & Paragraph Numbering

Transcribed and Edited by  
Diane Guerrero

---



*A Fountain of Gardens, Volume 3*, by Jane Lead

*Spirit's Day Version (SDV)*, by Diane Guerrero

SDV Copyright 2013, 2017, 2018, 2025 by Diane Guerrero

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without the written permission of the copyright holder.

Diane Guerrero, Editor

Spirit's Day Studies

The Writings of Jane Lead

Web: [www.Janelead.org](http://www.Janelead.org)

Email: [diane@janelead.org](mailto:diane@janelead.org)

The Spirit's Day mission is to sound the trumpet-alarm for the coming Kingdom of Christ's Love, and to reach and equip the Children of the Kingdom in preparation for this ultimate and glorious event, through the literary works of ancient, prophetic, holy and devout souls.

### **About the Spirit's Day Version**

The goal of the Spirit's Day Version (SDV) is to assist the modern reader wherever archaic language might prove difficult in reading and understanding these glorious Mysteries. The paramount ambition was to remain faithful to the text, while preserving the beautiful writing style of this Mystical Author, as well as the classical flavor of the time period. The SDV is not a paraphrase, thus the writer's beautiful prose and unique terminology remain intact. For more information about how this version was prepared, please visit [About the SDV](#) on the website.

As the manifestation of the Kingdom of the Love draws near, His promised Spirit will explain all things, and lead us into all Truth. For indeed only the Anointed Holy Seekers and Loving Inquirers shall truly understand and advance in these profound Mysteries, as presented to us by the Spirit of Truth—whom we are to earnestly look for, and diligently wait upon.

Diane Guerrero

Editor of the Spirit's Day Version

†††

A  
FOUNTAIN  
OF  
**Gardens:**

OR,  
A SPIRITUAL DIARY  
OF THE  
Wonderful Experiences of a CHRISTIAN  
SOUL, under the Conduct of the  
Heavenly WISDOM;

Continued for the Year MDCLXXVIII.

**P. J. De Louthembourg**

Vol. III. Part. I.

By J. LEAD.

Printed in the Year 1700.

## The CONTENTS

<b>THE EPISTLE TO THE READER.....</b>	<b>8</b>
Alarm to the Imperial Powers .....	8
Alarm to the Ecclesiastical Order .....	9
Alarm to Heroic Souls.....	9
<b>CHAPTER 1 .....</b>	<b>11</b>
January 1, 1678 A Crystalline Figure Descends from the Sea of Glass .....	11
January 3, 1678 The Former Vision Opened .....	11
January 4, 1678 The New Creation Cleared.....	12
<b>CHAPTER 2 .....</b>	<b>18</b>
January 6, 1678 The Stone of the Kingdom.....	18
January 7, 1678 The Date of Time.....	18
January 10, 1678 Transformation .....	18
January 11, 1678 All that the Father has is Mine*.....	18
January 12, 1678 A Caution about Preserving the Fire of the Altar .....	19
January 15, 1678 The Holy Court .....	19
<b>CHAPTER 3 .....</b>	<b>22</b>
January 17, 1678 The Threefold State of Man.....	22
January 18, 1678 An Answer to an Objection Against the Translated State.....	24
<b>CHAPTER 4 .....</b>	<b>30</b>
January 22, 1678 Renovation of Youth.....	30
January 28, 1678 The Womb of the Morning, and the Dew of Youth .....	30
February 1, 1678 An Alarm of the Spirit to the Friends of the Bridegroom .....	30
February 5, 1678 A Commemoration of My Widowhood .....	32
February 6, 1678 The Body of Sin Sacrificed.....	33
February 7, 1678 Weights and Measures .....	33
February 8, 1678 The Motion of the Earth .....	33
February 9, 1678 A Transport Out of the Gross Earthy Body .....	33
February 10, 1678 The Interpretation of this Vision .....	34
<b>CHAPTER 5 .....</b>	<b>36</b>
February 11, 1678 The Fountain Blood* .....	36
February 12, 1678 Rehoboth* .....	36
February 14, 1678 Winter Fruit: or, the Two Flig Birds .....	36
February 15, 1678 The Mixed, or Twofold State .....	37
February 16, 1678 The Three Unclean Creatures: A Dream .....	37
February 17, 1678 The Interpretation of the Dream.....	37
February 18, 1678 An Appointed Time for Everything .....	38
February 19, 1678 Remove Evil Counselors.....	38

Earthly Thoughts .....	39
February 20, 1678 The Sacred Fire: A Vision .....	41
February 21, 1678 The Interpretation of the Vision .....	41
<b>CHAPTER 6 .....</b>	<b>42</b>
February 22, 1678 The Unlimited Gift .....	42
February 23, 1678 The Dark Cloud .....	42
February 26, 1678 Interpretation of the Vision of the Winter Fruit .....	43
March 1, 1678 The Flaming Tent: A Vision .....	44
March 2, 1678 The Blood Under the Altar .....	44
March 5, 1678 The Altar of the Third Degree .....	45
March 6, 1678 A Word of Caution .....	47
<b>CHAPTER 7 .....</b>	<b>48</b>
March 12, 1678 The Mystery of the Altar Further Explained .....	48
March 13, 1678 A Continuance on the Altar's Discourse .....	49
March 15, 1678 The Ransom Out of the Sanctuary .....	51
March 16, 1678 The Man of the Earth .....	52
<b>CHAPTER 8 .....</b>	<b>53</b>
March 18, 1678 Interpretation of the Former Vision .....	53
March 19, 1678 The Old Leaven .....	56
March 20, 1678 An Alarm in the Night .....	56
March 21, 1678 The Interpretation .....	56
March 23, 1678 The Unknown Warfare .....	57
March 25, 1678 The Living Statues: A Vision .....	57
<b>CHAPTER 9 .....</b>	<b>59</b>
March 29, 1678 The Parable of a Mill: In Vision .....	59
April 1, 1678 The Fine Framed Mill* .....	59
April 2, 1678 Interpretation of the Former Vision .....	59
April 7, 1678 The Blessing .....	61
April 11, 1678 The Lamb's Warriors .....	64
<b>CHAPTER 10 .....</b>	<b>65</b>
April 13, 1678 The Nest-Hunters .....	65
April 16, 1678 The Essential Matter of the Universal Blessing .....	65
April 20, 1678 Redeem the Hour .....	66
May 8, 1678 A Call to the Mount of Divine Vision .....	66
The Vast Treasury .....	68
<b>CHAPTER 11 .....</b>	<b>70</b>
May 10, 1678 The Key of the Properties of Eternal Nature .....	70
May 12, 1678 The Mountain-Seal .....	70
May 15, 1678 The Interpretation .....	70

<b>CHAPTER 12.....</b>	<b>76</b>
May 19, 1678 On the Same Subject .....	76
May 20, 1678 The Deifying Properties of Eternal Nature.....	76
May 21, 1678 The Sea of Eternal Nature.....	76
May 29, 1678 The Angelical Womb .....	76
June 1, 1678 The Fire-Seed: This Vision was in the Night .....	77
June 2, 1678 Interpretation of the Vision.....	77
June 4, 1678 The Overthrow of the Kingdom of the BEAST .....	78
June 6, 1678 The Leopard on the Throne.....	78
June 8, 1678 The Seat of the Beast became the Throne of the LAMB.....	78
June 9, 1678 The Stronghold of Faith* .....	79
June 14, 1678 God Sows Himself in Man .....	79
 <b>CHAPTER 13.....</b>	 <b>82</b>
June 23, 1678 Separate the Precious from the Vile: or, the Altar-Fire.....	82
June 24, 1678 The Heave-Offering* .....	82
June 25, 1678 The Anchor of Hope* .....	82
June 28, 1678 God Spares Not Whom He Loves .....	83
July 1, 1678 The Eternal Canaan* .....	83
July 3, 1678 The Tempestuous Voyage: or, The Treasure.....	84
July 9, 1678 The Bloody Path .....	85
July 10, 1678 The Girdle of Unity.....	86
 <b>CHAPTER 14.....</b>	 <b>87</b>
July 19, 1678 The Opening of the Vision Received July 9th.....	87
July 20, 1678 The Patience of Faith.....	89
July 21, 1678 Earth to Earth.....	89
July 23, 1678 The Fine Righteousness .....	89
July 24, 1678 The Wise Adventure .....	90
July 25, 1678 The Flaming Tabernacle.....	90
July 26, 1678 The Flying Roll.....	90
July 27, 1678 The Tree of the Divine Magia.....	90
 <b>CHAPTER 15.....</b>	 <b>93</b>
July 29, 1678 The Refining House .....	93
July 30, 1678 The True Habitation* .....	93
July 31, 1678 The Seven Counselors .....	93
August 2, 1678 The True Shepherd's Call .....	96
August 10, 1678 God in Nature.....	96
August 12, 1678 What Comes Late Comes Double.....	97
August 13, 1678 The True Priestly Habit .....	97
August 14, 1678 Celestial Nitre: or, the Antidote in Persecution.....	98
August 15, 1678 A Visional Parable of the Sheep and a Wolf: or, the Thorny Passage.....	98
August 16, 1678 An Admonition to Obedience* .....	98
 <b>CHAPTER 16.....</b>	 <b>99</b>
August 17, 1678 The Word of Faithfulness .....	99
August 18, 1678 The Sign, and the Thing Signified .....	99

August 20, 1678	How the Prophets of Old and the Apostles preserved the Word of Truth, .....	99
August 25, 1678	The Sun-Stone Rising Out of the Earth.....	101
August 28, 1678	Interpretation of this Magical Stone.....	101
September 1, 1678	The Shooting of the Gulf.....	103
September 2, 1678	The Vision Interpreted .....	104
September 8, 1678	A Call out of Babylon .....	104
<b>CHAPTER 17.....</b>	<b>106</b>	
September 24, 1678	The Passover.....	106
October 8, 1678	Formation and Animation .....	106
October 19, 1678	Beware of the Concision.....	109
October 20, 1678	The Workmanship of Christ: or, The Sealing Image.....	109
October 28, 1678	The Jewel: or, the Thunder-bolt.....	111
October 29, 1678	The Blood of the Covenant.....	112
<b>CHAPTER 18.....</b>	<b>113</b>	
October 30, 1678	L E B A N O N .....	113
October 31, 1678	The Seed of L E B A N O N.....	113
November 5, 1678	The Fountain out of the Rock .....	113
November 6, 1678	The Love Chain .....	114
November 10, 1678	The Wilderness.....	114
November 12, 1678	A Call into the Vineyard .....	114
November 13, 1678	The Angelical Key.....	115
November 14, 1678	The Line of the Spirit.....	116
November 20, 1678	The Sovereignty of the Will.....	117
<b>CHAPTER 19.....</b>	<b>120</b>	
December 1, 1678	Letter and Spirit: The Vision of a Roll .....	120
December 2, 1678	The Interpretation of the Vision.....	120
December 3, 1678	The Proclamation of the New Creation.....	121
December 4, 1678	The Angelical Articles .....	122
December 5, 1678	The New Tent Erected.....	123
December 7, 1678	Contraries Reconciled .....	124
December 15, 1678	The School of Wisdom: A Transportation .....	124
December 18, 1678	The Angelical Philosophy .....	125
<b>CHAPTER 20.....</b>	<b>126</b>	
December 19, 1678	The Theosophical Eye.....	126
December 20, 1678	The Rules that are taught in Wisdom's School.....	127
December 22, 1678	S O L O M O N .....	130
December 24, 1678	The Narrow Bridge.....	130
	A Parabolical Explication of the Eighth and Tenth Rules of the Theosophical Art .....	130

## The Epistle to the Reader

[3F E:1] §.Forasmuch as the Author of this Diary has been led up to the Watch-Tower, as a foreseer of that Great and Notable Day prophesied of, relating to the manifestation of the descending powers of the Holy Ghost, preparing and ushering in the glorious reign and Kingdom of our *Emanuel*: which is so near approaching, that I am under a mighty constraining power to alarm all Ranks, Orders, and Degrees of persons, from the highest to the lowest, that so they may be found in readiness, to entertain the joyful tidings of the reign and dominion of Christ in Spirit.

### Alarm to the Imperial Powers

[3F E:2] I shall first begin with the Imperial Powers of the Earth, viz., Kings, Queens, Nobles, and all of that progeny, to whom this message is principally sent from the High Court and Council of Heaven: that you may understand that this is the Acceptable Time and Season for the fulfilling of that Prophecy; to come forth and show yourselves to be Nursing Fathers and Nursing Mothers to the Church of the Firstborn, that is now to be gathered out of the various forms, traditions and customs (that have been built up only of man's wisdom), into the power, life, and glorious Ministration of the Spirit. This is the main drift and scope of what you will find treated of in this Volume. The Author, being led into that Prophetical Dispensation, in order to what may be expected to have its ensuing consummation in this age of time, has received a charge, to excite you as being what is incumbent upon you, as you stand in great power and authority, to be encouragers and supporters, for helping forward the work of this Great Day; For be it known to you that no less is demanded from you by the High and Mighty Prince of Glory.

[3F E:3] For as God has put into your hand an advantage more than others, for the Propagating of His Kingdom, so that you may be more eminent Instruments, for drawing and gathering in them that have lain scattered and dispersed, into Christ's Fold; and that you may each one in your several stations appear in that Kingly *Josiah*-Spirit, making it your whole design to reform and build up that which has been under Great Decay since the Apostle's time, and the reviving again of that which has been buried under a cloud of ignorance, deadness and earthly-mindedness. Now be wise for yourselves, O Kings and Princes of the Earth. For in as much as you seek and promote the honor of God, and the Reign of His Kingdom here upon the earth, so He will establish not only your Thrones and Kingdoms here below, but also in the Heavenly Places, which are permanent and durable, Crowns that cannot fall away; which may be a sufficient motive to stir you up, after the pursuit of so great an enterprise.

[3F E:4] I have only this one consideration further to provoke you hereunto: That one devout and godly Prince may be a means, by the Spirit's assistance, to reduce, and gain a whole nation into obedience and conformity to the Laws of the Divine Kingdom. And oh! What transcendent dignity will it then be, when every king shall become a King, Priest, and Prophet, unto God? Blessed will you be that shall find such an holy ambition hereunto, for which the Author shall pray for you all most ardently.



### Alarm to the Ecclesiastical Order

[3F E:5] §.And now I shall proceed, according to the Commission given me, to speak a word or two to the Ecclesiastical Order, and all other Pastors and Teachers under whatsoever Denomination, that since the Day-Spring from on High, has begun to cast forth its rays of light in greater brightness than heretofore: You are now required to consider to what your ministry tends, which is no more to be according to a dead draught of Literal Knowledge, collected and gathered up from historical authors. This face of covering is to be rent away from off the true ministry, as the Spirit's Day draws near; which will take up such as shall be as Sounding Trumpets and Horns, filled with pure Golden Oil; that as there has been a sowing in the deadness of the Letter, there may be a going forth to sow the Live Sparks, flowing from the Springing Power of the Holy Ghost; which will be as a True Seal upon your Commission, and so the primitive glory shall break forth brighter than ever.

[3F E:6] And who would not be found as Ambassadors and Messengers, to proclaim the mighty appearance of those Gushing Powers, which are upon their pouring forth from the Heavenly Worlds? Some witness hereof may undeniably be tasted and felt in this ensuing Treatise, where you will plainly see, that the Author was not in any way accomplished by knowledge, wisdom, or understanding from without, but merely from the fresh rising upsprings of the Holy Spirit, which plentifully opened themselves within. This manifestation of the Spirit stands free to all the worthy Seekers and Waiters, that shall become desirous and willing to be taught from the immediate inspiring and dictates of the Holy Ghost. And so shall you give a true proof of your ministry, refined from the dregs of all mixed and muddy springs, attending upon that great Angel of the Everlasting Covenant's moving in the Pure Pool and Center of the Soul's Essence, wherefrom may arise and flow the fresh Anointings: as True Priests, that may feed and nourish your Auditors with sound Wisdom and Knowledge in the Divine Mysteries. Then you will be right Evangelists, reviving that Apostolical doctrine, which has been under such a lapse and sad decay; in which cloudy time and day of ignorance, God has with withdrawn Himself.

[3F E:7] But now a mighty rushing Wind blows from the Heavens, to Breathe Life into the Slain Witnesses; that they may rise and Anoint their Shields, and come forth in the Urim and Thummim, to show their Sealed Ministry from the Holy Ghost. Highly blessed are those that understand this loud Trumpet-call, giving up themselves in all pure abstraction and dedication, as God's true Priestly Host. This is all I have to commend to you who are Pastors and Teachers, in which great dignity and honor will characterize your function, being such as bear the Inscription of the Lord's Anointed. And O! What rejoicings and high acclamations in the Heavens will be, when such a ministry as this shall be planted throughout all nations, for the bringing forth of a New Creation Glory, in the hopes of which I conclude, with prayers to our great *Melchizedek* King and Priest.

### Alarm to Heroic Souls

[3F E:8] §.Now the third sort to which my Epistle is directed are those Heroic Souls, who are already in a good degree Baptized into this Faith, as being made partakers of the inspiring teachings, and powers of the Holy Ghost, and who have already given a proof, confession, and possession,<sup>1</sup> of what has been published of this Divine and Mystic Divinity, which they have encouraged and promoted. What I have further to say to these is no less that what the Lord Himself pronounces: Blessed are the Stewards to whom He has committed the choice and precious Treasures that are contained in that Book of Life that is Unsealed in them; and as dear fellow lovers and laborers with me, to find out

---

<sup>1</sup> SDV Note: "ownment" in the original.

what is yet in reserve, further to be revealed, that we may mutually rejoice together, through the continued rising and springing powers from the God-head source, that will still be fresh and new. O! What can be more grateful and pleasant than to be entertained with all variety, in our renewed *Paradise* planted within our own souls, wherein our new Eternal *Adam* has appeared and espoused us to Himself, restoring that Pure Virginity, which the First *Adam* lost out of himself! Here we know it recovered again, so that the blessing of multiplication, through Spiritual Generation, is known for the increase and replenishment of the New Earth: where our walks with God are renewed, to see Him eye to eye in all freedom, in the Spirit of His Glorified Humanity.

[3F E:9] Thus our lot is fallen in an Everlasting and Unfadable Land: where now let us all join together as in One United Band, supporting and upholding each other while in our traveling way, admitting of nothing that would stop or prevent us; till we come to possess in all full fruition what in prophecy is specified in the *Fountain of Gardens*: more principally in this Third Volume to which I refer you, who are in more nearer alliance, and congruity in Spirit with me, not doubting but our growth in Spirit shall mightily succeed, so as to become the Lilies wherein with all love and delight, we shall meet with each other, and feed together in that Pasture of Love, where our Kingly Shepherd will set His Mark. Which is His own Undefined Name: the Inscription of which be upon you, and all those who shall be gathered into the true *Philadelphian* Fold; in which indissoluble knot of Love-Unity I desire to be known, both in Time and in Eternity,

Jane Lead

## Chapter 1

### January 1, 1678 A Crystalline Figure Descends from the Sea of Glass

[3F 1:1] §.On New Year's Day, upon the break thereof, this figure was presented to me, as the model of a New Creating Power, and opened by an image of transparent glass, which descended from the Sea of Glass, and stood as upon a mountain of earth, which after a very little season moldered all away, and became a plain. And then it was said, "Now observe, and see what will follow." And out of the belly of this clarified body flowed water; that became as a great river; that covered all the plain, which soon drank these waters in. And then the Word said, "Spring O ground, and bring forth another creation." Then there arose from the same figurative body, a pure light, which sprung within the case of glass, from the loins upwards to the head, and out of the mouth a fiery stream did proceed, which descended where the waters were drunk in. And it was given immediately, by the soft whisper of the Spirit, that this would be the Sowing of the Holy Ghost, in a plain and leavened ground, which would bring forth after its own kind, as to Spirit and Body. The Lord my God hereby did also signify much to me, which draws the mind to wait attentively, to be made the subject matter that may be formed into the like transparency, which so naturally flows from the fullness of a glorified humanity. Now He is said to be the beginning of that New Creation, which is to succeed the old. §.Ah my Lord, who shall enjoy the firstfruits of this pure mingling of the Glassy Sea, from where the Birth of the Holy Ghost flows so freely?

### January 3, 1678 The Former Vision Opened

[3F 1:2] §.It was said that the Love Banner and Pavilion of Power should be our stronghold and hiding, therefore, *Give yourselves no rest, till you find it out*, spoke the Holy Unction from within. Then the Vision and the Transparent Glassy-Body was further opened to me, which was presented to show the Original, from which the New Creature in the powerful Divine Nature would spring. The Mountain of Earth, which was seen to molder away as soon as the Heavenly Figure appeared, was opened to be the Earthly Man, which became a plain or passive thing for the Holy Ghost to be sown in; which would readily drink in this Fountain-Power, and co-join together for a pure formation. And so it would come forth a compacted Body all Crystalline, and made all meet for the Fiery Breath to enter, and set it upon its Feet to walk with *Jesus* upon the *Glassy-Sea*, which encompasses the Throne of the Most Holy, as a Body of Might and great Wonder. For it was revealed that of this kind, the Perfect Order of the New Creation would be constituted.

[3F 1:3] I was advised by the Counsel of the Holy Trinity to look into this Great Mystery: for such a Change will happen to the Elected Ones, as they shall here believe for it, and in perseverance prepare to wear such a Transfiguring Glory, as may become the Region of Purity, where God and the Lamb appear with them. For what else at present deprives us of the Beatifical Vision, and free society and liberty of converse with what is all Deified, but the meanness of our spirits, that mixes and hangs upon these earthly things, so as our Lord knows not how to be free or familiar with us? For we

cannot bear the Clarity of His Glorified Person, except by transient Vision, or by some sudden catching up, as out of the Body; which remain but for a little season. Now our Spirits have much urged intimacy, and to keep up acquaintance and conversation with Him (who is as Flesh of our Flesh, and as Bone of our Bone), accounting it very grievous to be excluded from Him, who has undertaken our Restoration, and to be our Restorer.

[3F 1:4] Upon which considerations we have near alliance to Him, for the satisfying and quieting of such Restless Spirits, that will in no way be answered, but in a co-existing and mutual Fellowship with the now Glorified Person of Jesus. His Spirit most freely and plainly declared to me, that there was no other way for the attainment hereof, but by the Baptism of Water and Fire, as the Seed-Life, which consummates the very real Birth of the Holy Ghost which will absolutely make a perfect and fixed Change through the whole Nature; which till then, we cannot expect that apparent Sight and Union of that high degree, it taking up all Spiritual Community with Him as we have often specified. For all things relating hereunto must be in equal proportion and suitableness, as *New Bottles* to hold the mighty vigorous Wine of the Spirit. This Word was unfolded more deep than what has been generally seen or understood of it. The Bottle is the New Creature, which signifies the very Form and Figure, in which, and through which, the Holy Acting Power animates in a Body suitable to itself, all of Celestial Matter, according to the Nature of the *Glassy-Sea*, which admits nothing of a Cloudy Matter to darken or dim the Glory, Beauty, and Perfection thereof

### January 4, 1678 The New Creation Cleared

[3F 1:5] §. Hereupon came an Objection, *Why this Transparent Creation has been so long withheld; and nothing hereof made manifest, but the old form and figure of things, still running on from Generation to Generation* (the whole Creation being concluded under Sin, Death, Bondage and the Curse), as is apparent to this Day? Whereby an universal Incredulity is taken up, as questioning, *Whether ever any such Renovation shall be, in order to a Celestial Figuration upon what is now corporeal?*

[3F 1:6] §. This is the great query that the Lord from Heaven has answered, according to this Word: That ever since *Adam* had forfeited and lost his Angelical Body (through the enchantment of the Serpent, who could suddenly introduce a strange disguise, upon their parley and their compliance with his temptation), the effects were soon known upon both *Adam* and *Eve*, in being turned into a Mortal Image. By which they were in no condition to keep in the Paradisical Station, neither could they now bear the presence of God as before, who enjoyed His frequent visits, as delighting to see His own likeness, in the Image of Purity in them. But having changed the glory of what was incorruptible into a vile corruptible Form, God could no longer bear them so near to Him: but drove them out into a rude and unplanted Earth, which could bring forth nothing, but through the Toil of the Hand and Sweat of the Brow, as the effects of God's displeasure; which replenishment of this unpolished Earth, is kept up by the continued labor and industry of man.

### The Law of Necessity

[3F 1:7] And as one Generation has succeeded another, so also one has excelled another in Arts, Sciences, and Skill to contrive all such things that might be all delightful and pleasurable, in Imitation of that True Paradise. Which (as that was agreeable to the Celestial Image, so) now through the deep searching reason of the Natural Fallen Man, has made great improvement of this Chaos, having so manured it, and dignified it, that it is now become as the Garden of God. And now the Creature

rejoices in the workmanship of his own hand, and is swallowed up in the pleasant things he has devised and brought forth to satisfy all his senses in, and is at rest in the fullness of all things that is grateful to this Corporeal State: some in the evil and sinful excess, and others in the more sober and moderate use of them. So that they of all sorts, degrees, and kinds, that live in Terrestrial Bodies, do reckon themselves under the Law of Necessity, to bow and submit to that subordinate power that now governs and rules, by the permission of the Almighty God; who has and yet suffers it, proving the Spirit of Man hereby in the trust and management of what can be extracted out of this Principle, for the support and comfort of a Mortal Being.

### **The Ancient Decree**

[3F 1:8] But that was only allowed for the present distress, but not forever herewith to take up, and so to be at rest in the circulation of an Elementary Life, that is subject to all the effects that sin, sickness, care, and sorrow can bring in. God would not that we should altogether forget what we were, in the Primary State and first formation in Paradise; nor to be deceived or bribed in our judgments from this Earthly Principle; which by natural wisdom, art, and industry, is brought into such a pompous, flourishing, pleasurable habitation, as might seduce and captivate the Superior Life, and altogether drown in the Floods of pernicious pleasures: which the animal, sensual Mind aptly delights itself in, thereby forgetting from where it did proceed, and what its Ancient Degree was in the Eternal Body of Wisdom, before it came down into this vile and Terrestrial Form. On which any rarely makes reflection, so as to consider what hereby they are degraded of; the Divine Sense being altogether locked up, and the Immortal Thing engulfed in the pernicious earthly life; Though the Mirror of Truth and Righteousness is come in the Figure of Perfection, to convince man of his degenerate being, as found in the Body of Sin and Death: And to provoke their turning back to the Heavenly Country, out from which that in man which is Eternal did spring.

### **The Living Door**

[3F 1:9] The way for it being opened by Christ Incarnating Himself, and so hereby becoming the Living Door to return into our Father's House again. And He has hereunto summoned the whole fallen and Apostatized Creation, that find themselves oppressed and grieved under the burden and yoke of the sinful oppressing life to return. But truly very few are come to the denying, and hating of this Strange Introduced Life, that is under sin and servitude to all that are of a gross temporary nature. And God, seeing His Creatures to be so satisfied and reconciled to this low and mean way of existence in mortal forms, has so permitted Generation after Generation to fulfill their Course, till by a Mortal Death they have expired this Life, and suffered all the effects which Original Sin brought forth. But now the Ancient Prophecies of a New State of things are to be fulfilled. And Blessed are they that are come within the view of this Restored State, and believe to see the Jasper-Stone to descend out of the Everlasting Mountain, to bring forth that Strange and Wonderful Change upon those who are First Awakened out of the Dead and secure Sleep.

### **The Voice of the Trumpet**

[3F 1:10] For the Hour is come for the Dead, or those who have rested in the Silent Grave, to hear the Voice of the Trumpet, and thereby to come forth, according to the figuration of the Holy Ghost. As it is written, *All shall not Die but be Changed*, as meet Subjects, to live under the Reign of the Lamb in a New Sheepfold; who will be separated from the Goats, and Wolfish Nature, that has acted forth in and through many during the Lord's absence, and disappearance of this Mighty Sovereignty.

Jesus often in His Day darted forth such sayings as to this Restitution, in reference both to Body, Soul, and Spirit: though the Mystery hereof was little understood, neither then, nor to this time, but by such to whom the clear Glass of Wisdom is given, with the Clear Eye of the Spirit to see into it. Which the mind of God sees into: which truly was very uncouth to my own rational Spirit, and I often opposed against this Truth, till extraordinary powers and convincing arguments were renewed daily for the informing of my belief, and the Holy Scriptures brought for the confirmation thereof. I shall point to them, as they were immediately brought to my mind:

[3F 1:11] First that of *John 11:26, Whosoever liveth and believeth in me, shall never die.* It was thus expounded to me: “You who were once considered dead in Trespasses and Sins, yet through believing in me, as that Creating Power, that enters you into a New Formation of Life by the Spirit, you are consecrated thereby, to live evermore in the unity of my Life.” Then that of *John 8:51, Verily if a Man keep my sayings he shall never see Death.* This was a strange saying, which the Jews took up presently to disprove Him by the Patriarchs and Prophets, in that they were deceased, which our Lord contradicted not; for except *Enoch* and *Elias* we have no knowledge of any, but they all died a Natural Death. Yet it is written, *God is not the God of the Dead, but of the Living.* Many Scriptures more were opened to this end. I shall add one more, that of *Paul* in *2Corinthians 5, For we know if our Earthly Tabernacle be dissolved;* and so read on from the first verse to the 5th, and you may understand what the Apostle drives at: Even that Mortality might be Swallowed up of Life.

#### **Why the Redemption of the Body was not made Manifest on the Day of Pentecost**

[3F 1:12] But now it may be further questioned, *Why the Redemption of the Body was not made manifest in that day when the Holy Ghost descended? We have nothing in record that anyone, upon whom the Cloven Tongue rested, were changed out of their Mortal Figure, but they were only endowed with extraordinary Gifts and Powers, to witness that Christ was ascended, and gave down these Gifts, as He had promised.* This very thing was greatly controverted in my own spirit, therefore I expect it no less to be objected by others. But give me leave to answer such with the same Word which silenced my doubting spirit herein, which I dare to affirm was from the Pure Unction, who thus informed me: That those Signal Powers, that then wrought forth in the Discipleship by way of Miracles, in the curing and healing of diseased bodies, and sometimes in raising the dead, was a Ministration peculiar for that Age.

#### **“Another” Pentecost**

[3F 1:13] But I will give you the very words of the Spirit, as they did run through me, saying, “That now these Cures wrought upon diseased mortals, were but a Forerunning Type, to show that the same Spirit of Power would work in its day, in a far higher and more wonderful way than by propping and keeping up the old Fabric of Mortality, which could never bring perfect Restoration to the burdened and grieved Seed. Therefore expect Another Day of Pentecost to come, which will bring a Perfect Cure to mortals, even to a Transmuting of the vile Bodies; that they may conspicuously and transparently appear, so that they may be in likeness to the Jasper-Stone, to their Head Prince and Lord. This will be the Next Shower, and Rushing Power, that will go through the Mortal Death, which all in common, the Just and Unjust, without distinction have put off the Body alike. This is granted; for thus it has been ever since the relapse, and driving out of *Paradise.*”

[3F 1:14] *But has God so decreed that what through Death has Reigned over all this 5,000 and odd years, shall be so to the End of Time?* No, truly, the Last Ages shall see other things as the Holy Inspirator has frequently shown me. And while doubts have come to overthrow the Testimony of the

Spirit herein: When speaking by Vision, and so therefrom interpreting the Mind of Christ accordingly. In this method I have been much instructed, and the Veil upon the Letter taken off, that so an understanding might be given me in the Ancient Records of Truth, to confirm what is the present Dispensation, that some (known to the Lord) are under present and private Prophecies of, answering to foregoing ones, that were taught by the same Spirit, which becomes their Sealing Evidence.

### Bread from Heaven

[3F 1:15] §.But to proceed to those other Scriptures which were brought in for further ratification of this great Truth: In *John 5:24*, Christ tells them, *That they that believe in Him that sent Him, shall have Everlasting Life*; having passed from Death, or escaped Death. Again, Christ undertakes to prove there is a State that will be swallowed up into Immortality, thus from these Words, *Your Fathers did eat Bread or Manna in the Wilderness, and are Dead, but whosoever shall be able to Eat of the Bread that comes down from Heaven* (meaning Himself, He tells them without any mincing that), *they shall not Die, but Live Forever* (*John 6:49, 58*). And whereas it may be objected, that it is to be understood of an Internal Spiritual Life, belonging to the Immortal Part: if so, the Lord needed not to have mentioned the Decease of their Fathers; for though they died temporally, yet still they exist eternally.

### And Explanation of John 5:25

[3F 1:16] But then further, one Scripture was unexpectedly darted into all these, and interpreted, which I never before understood tending to this sense: *He that loves his Life shall lose it, and he that hates his Life in this World, shall keep it unto Life Eternal* (*John 5:25*). Thus it was opened by the Spirit: He that is pleased, and reconciled, and is satisfied, and loves his low corporeal and Degraded Life, in which is the very Seat and Spring of Sin: such shall suffer loss through Death; for the Sin will not be expired, though the Mortal Part be. But then again Christ plainly declares, that those who are come into a deep sense of the depravity, as to all perfection of Divine Excellencies, so as deny and abhor, and hate, and freely be made willing to lay it down, they shall keep it; but no longer after the same Earthly and Sinful property, with all its Mortal Weakness. The whole state of this shall hereby be altered, as Christ's Body was sown in weakness and dishonor, but raised and taken up in strength, honor and victory. Even so they that can reach this Mystical Death shall be changed into Immortality of Life.

[3F 1:17] But an Echo in my Ear sounded from this Lower Sphere, that *This is strange and unheard of Doctrine, who can bear it?* crying, *When or to whom shall this Transfiguration come, saying, the highest Degree of all Saints have deceased, without any such change upon the Mortal Form. Why is this Great Thing to be expected now, more than formerly?* You are for this referred to that Wisdom and Counsel of the Holy Trinity, who orders the Times and Seasons, according to the Counsel of their Will, Whose manifold Wisdom is to work in their Various Dispensations throughout all Ages, as will be seen, when the scene of all their Works from the Creation shall be opened, in relation to Man's Fall and Restoration. Out of which Great Wonders are yet to be brought forth more conspicuous than have been since the Creation.

### A Second Infusion of the Holy Ghost

[3F 1:18] The Apostles indeed expected the Full Restoration of the Kingdom, when Christ their Lord after His Ascension, did by Signal Gifts and Powers, give down the Holy Ghost: but the time and season was not then for it. There was something further to be done first, by the Mediatorship of

the Great High-Priest, in preparing for the Tabernacle of God to come down: in and by which the Mystery of God and Christ act, through the Second Infusion of the Holy Ghost, for Transformation of Bodies. As before, it wrought upon the Mind and Spirit, so now upon the illustration of the Vile Corporeal Form, which will make Man capable to be trusted with Dominion and Power, in the Joint Heirship of the Everlasting Kingdom. All foregoing Ministrations of the Spirit do point hereunto, and do here prepare for it, that we might come to wear the Celestial Garment. The Spirit of Jesus being at hand to declare what will be the ready way hereunto.

### **Called and Awakened**

[3F 1:19] And for as such, as the Day is showed to be very near, He has Called and Awakened some from the Dead, to look for this sure Word of Promise to be fulfilled, and gives encouragement hereunto, from the scattering Beams of His own Body of Light, and is giving forth Choice Provision, that is, His own Ethereal Body, as the Proper Nutriment for this Supersensual Life to feed upon. According to that Word, as He did Live by the Father, in His Divine Corporeity, so we might come to Live, and have a Coexistency with Him, through a Perpetuity of Life, conveyed Mystically from Him: which will become the Matter of His Heavenly Form, as we are able to feed every Vein-Spring, from this deep Well of Life, that so we may be nourished with his Blood-Life in every part, till we feel a gradual renewing, through the Whole Frame of Mortality. The Lord hereunto has expressly invited such, who are burdened and weary of their own Sinful Form. Therefore let none stagger at these things, or be offended, but Hope and Wait here patiently for it.

### **The Transparent Body, or, Terrestrial and Celestial**

[3F 1:20] §. This Morning the Holy Spirit was still in free way of parley, upon the weighty concern tending to this Transmutation: declaring it to be the full Consummation of a Fixed Restoration, that gives immediate entrance into Glorification. But then came in this Query to be answered, *If it should be possible, for any to attain to this Resurrection-Body, answerable to that, in which our Lord did ascend into Glory, what should any one do with such a Transparent Body, to walk and converse amongst such, as yet retain their Vile Corporeal forms: they could nor would not be able to bear their Persons. So that without there could be a general transformation, there could be no consistency between what is Terrestrial and Celestial: the one is suited for the Earth, the other for Heaven; and only mete to enter into the Eternal Mystery.*

### **The Change of Raiment**

[3F 1:21] This was a considerable Objection, which I humbly referred to that which answers on God's part. Thus it was said, that such among Mortals, as should be counted worthy of this Immortality, and such as should be appointed hereunto, for some peculiar and eminent work to transact in this Principle for the Lord; know this: They shall not be without their Change of Raiment, and shall have ability to put off and on their Ethereal Body, as occasion requires. For thus Christ did after His Resurrection, or else His Disciples would have been terrified at His presence, who so frequently did visit them, and did eat Corporeal Food, as before His Crucifixion, and yet of a surety in that 40 Day's Time, had free Egress and Ingress into the Mystery of the Father's Glory: and when He had put on His Celestial Body, He could then pass among all the Angelical Thrones. But when He had yet business of the Father further to dispatch, He could draw over the Veil of Humanity, for consistency with Creatures that are in their Earthly Bodies. So from this the Teaching Unction did prove to me the



possibility hereof, that such a Power should be assumed by such *Enoch's*, as should closely walk with God, in order to this Translated State; For it was said he walked with God many years (as it may be believed), to appear and disappear in the world, before God took him fully up into the Mystery.

### **The Lord's Transfiguration**

[3F 1:21] §. Then again for a further confirmation, our Lord's Transfiguration was brought before me. He then having to do with Glorified Persons, He could presently put on a Glorified Form, and when they went up from Him, put it off again, for it was too wonderful for His Disciples to behold, it cast them into a sleep. And whereas it may be objected, this Power is only to be attributed to Christ? Know it, as from the Spirit of Truth, it is far from our Head to engross this Prerogative Power only to Himself. For of all His fullness shall the Just and Perfect partake, as Life for Life, and Glory for Glory. As all that the Father had Christ made claim to, so verily those that lie in the Life-line with Him may not fear or doubt, but what is the Lord Christ's is also theirs. Many more Arguments the Spirit poured in: as the Angels in their appearances in a suitable garb, when they had any Message to deliver to Mortals. As those that appeared to *Abraham* and *Lot*, they appeared in quite Another Form, than was their own natural Habit, in which they are found before the Throne Glory.

### **Transmutation**

[3F 1:23] Transmutation is no such difficulty, where the power of Omnipotency is infused. Could the Spirit of one in a Terrestrial Body come to be all clear, pure and free, so as no stirring of Sin in it could be found, you should soon see another Vehicle would be its figure and form, when occasion were for more immediate access to the Trinity. *Moses* could never have consisted in his Elementary Body 40 Days together, to hear, see, and receive the Law from God's own Mouth, if his Body had not been sublimated into a Spiritual Glory, which was not altogether withdrawn, when he came down from the Mount; for such a Shine was still left, as the people could not bear to behold him without a Veil.

### **The Heavenly and Glorious Dispensation**

[3F 1:24] Then also it was given me to understand, that those rich and costly Copes and Vestures, were assigned only for the Priests to Minister in the Most Holy Place, and then to put them off again, when they came out from Ministering in the Most Holy Tabernacle. All which did Type Out this most Heavenly and Glorious Dispensation, that accordingly as before, and in way of Preparation to that Mighty God, and our Lord and Savior's Appearance, there will be an Election of such a Holy Priesthood, that shall be Clothed with the Immaculate White Robe of Purity, that will have entrance, where the Great High Priest has made the way to the True and Substantial Tabernacle, where the Glory of the Majesty fills. And as there was a lower Order of Priests under the Great Chief High Priest, so accordingly a real Consecration by the Holy Anointing, will be for a Separation from all that is profane, common, and earthly, to be of this Priestly Function, annexed to our Lord Jesus in Nazaritical Purity: For the truth of this Dispensation has been evidently shown me.

## Chapter 2

### January 6, 1678 The Stone of the Kingdom

[3F 2:1] §.In the night after my first sleep, I saw somewhat like a Round Ball, mixed with all manner of colors very oriental, and it darted down from an Invisible Region to the Earth, where it seemed to sink in. After which it was said to me that this was the *Stone* upon which the Kingdom of Heaven was founded. Then this Word did further spring, inviting to be strong, and to hold fast those precious things, which are laid in, for the Transparent Temple of the Holy Ghost: in order to that Kingdom, that will be all consisting of God's Omnipotency, in this Resurrection-Day, when the Flying Banner of Almighty Power shall itself display.

### January 7, 1678 The Date of Time

[3F 2:2] §.This night I was in much conflict concerning the Time of this Spiritual Kingdom, as to the Time when it might appear, whether to any it was near. And it was thus answered by an Internal Word, saying, The Kingdom of Heaven so comes in, as the Evil Spirit is cast out: This kind, as it is written, Goes not out but by Fasting and Prayer. So truly this Kingdom will be manifested to no one, but by Great Abstinence from what props up and nourishes the Earthly and Satanical Kingdom. When you see that fall as lightening into its Own Abyss and Lake from where it came, then you may conclude the Kingdom of God is at the Door: for which pray with all manner of prayer and supplication through the Spirit.

### January 10, 1678 Transformation

[3F 2:3] §.The Holy Unction dropped in this Word while I was considering upon this Transformation, saying, The Just Ones, whose faith may hereunto extend, are to suck in a Pure Breath, that will make a Life to Rise and Spring, for the formation of such a Body, into which Sin can never come in. And therefore abide steady in your hopes and faith. For all its various operations in this respect are needful. For faith is the Great Wheel that turns about all of this kind; therefore take heed of doubting.

### January 11, 1678 All that the Father has is Mine\*

[3F 2:4] §.Then again this Word was ministered to me from that Scripture, *All that the Father has is mine*. Therefore the Comforter is now to communicate of the same good things that run parallel in that Line of Life from the Father unto me. So answerably all of that Fullness, Infused by Degrees unto a High Spirituality, that so Glory may swallow up what is Contemptible: For which hope, and be patient; for the Lord will not be unmindful of those who are daily urgent here for it.

**January 12, 1678**  
**A Caution about Preserving the**  
**Fire of the Altar**

[3F 2:5] §.Waiting deeply and internally in my Mind, about and upon a Spiritual case I pleaded with my God, Why such Cold Floods should happen upon the Altar-Fire to keep the Life-Flame from Rising, to such who still would make their Offerings *by Fire*. By earnest inquiring into this Spiritual matter; it was evidently shown me: 1. That there was something of a Natural Cause, 2. And somewhat from this World, that had its Choking Care to throw in, 3. And thirdly the watchful and revengeful Eye of the Dragon, who has always greatly withstood the going forward and accomplishment of the Kingdom of Power and Love: which the Nazarite Mind is pursuing after, and the Spirit strongly moving and pressing thereunto, but the Flaming Wheel meeting with these stops, goes on but heavily. Now direction was sought in this case, from Him who so naturally owns His in this Afflicted Principle, who are fixed to follow hard after Perfection. To whom this Counsel was given:

**Counsel for Pressing after Perfection**

[3F 2:6] First, that wise judicious care should be taken to cherish the Natural and Animal Spirits. For by reason of Age, there would aptly be a declining of the Heart-Vigor, from which that Spring of *Heavenly Fire* did open, and through obstruction from frail Weak Nature, the operation of this *Celestial Flame* may be hindered from displaying forth itself. Then if the distractive cares and thoughtfulness about these Outward Worldly things comes in, they do and will exceedingly press, and bind this *Spirit Flame*, and will dwell upon the very Mouth of the Central *Fire-Life*. Then the Subtle Serpent finds his Inroad made, and augments the Weight with great Fury and Rage. Therefore by all this the Holy One has given to us this caution, that we should be choice of this *Fire-Spring* to keep all out all that would Extinguish it. It is as a Tender Plant, that requires continual care to Nurse it up, and to Feed it with the Word of Life, that goes forth from the Instilling Breath of the Holy Unction. This only must drive forth its Heat again, and thereby raise up that which lies as Dead and Slain.

**January 15, 1678**  
**The Holy Court**

[3F 2:7] §.The truth of this following Ministration has been evidently shown me, and was thus presented to me in the Spiritual Glass: My spirit was carried, where I did see a Mount, which was not of any Earthly Mold, but all compact together of a Clear Element, upon which stood Four Pillars, which were of a Clear Amber Color; and round about it was drawn a Curtain of Purple, Blue, White and Scarlet. Upon this manifestation, I received this information: That this was the *Holy Court* and Secret Pavilion of the Most High, where lies the Ark of the Living Testimony. Hereinto, the Holy Royal Order of the Just and Perfect Priesthood shall both Ascend and Descend, and bring out from there, that which will evidently be a Blessing to the Lord's own Heritage. And the Spirit further declared, that till this Ministration is come to be set afoot in the World, no True, Sacred or Perfect Church or Sanctuary, could be found in Visibility in this Outward Fold.

**The Celestial Ministry**

[3F 2:8] And as there was a Holy Seed that lay in *Abraham's* Loins, out of which the Levitical Priesthood did spring, so was it said that from the like-Spirit of a Perfect Pure Heart, will another Priesthood in Faith arise, and Multiply as Stars, in the Order of a Celestial Ministry; that shall be all agreeable to the Church of the Firstborn, that with Jesus are gathered before-hand into His Trium-

phant Kingdom. This the Lord Christ did imply when He said, that the Sheep which were yet of this Outward Fold, must be brought up through His Mediatorship, where they should go in, and out, and be Satiated with those Portions, which are assigned for those who walk to and fro in the Upper Fold. The Great Shepherd aims to make of twain One Eternal and Unchangeable Priesthood. His Agent the Spirit is at work, to Separate and Call together His Own by Name, that so through the Distilling Dew falling down from the Heavenly Sphere, it should produce the shining Golden Fleece upon each one, who of this Separated Priestly Flock are called forth, to tread after the Footsteps of their Great High-Priest, and to follow Him wherever he goes.

### **A Strange New Doctrine**

[3F 2:9] §.But I think I hear a Voice of the Man of Reason say: *This is Strange and New Doctrine. Who can ever believe such a thing, when for so many Ages past, all that have been of the Highest Spiritual Growth, have departed away from this Lower Fold by Mortal Death?* I confess that to Flesh and Blood it is a Hard and Uncouth Saying, and cannot be digested, because it overturns the Seat of the Beast. His Mark, Name, and Nature, shall never more be found upon a Man thus transformed. The Dragon may well fight against this Truth, and may raise Storms of Unbelief. For whenever this Transmuting Stone of Wonder opens upon anyone its Mystery, such a blow will be given to his Kingdom, as shall not only shake it, but make it fall as a Mill-Stone into his own Bottomless Lake. For hereby will be Victory over Death, Hell, and Sin; and the Curse will be removed out of this Principle, and the Kingdom of Purity, and Power, and Everlasting Joy brought in.

[3F 2:10] §.But then again, another Cry did ring in my Ear from the Believing Ones, who are Ravished to hear such good things as these, as the Spirit of Jesus has to declare to those who are full weary of the Body of Sin and all its Lineaments, and are looking out for that which may Fully Redeem from this Grosser Husk of that which is Vile and Corrupt: Who are with me in a deep sense of their Degraded State, the same Word, which did to me speak for Refreshing and Strengthening Hope, the same to them verily belongs, as not daring from such to hide the Counsel of the Lord, which was by Manuduction given out thus. That seeing there are some, that are aiming to reach the Life-Mark, they are excited well to consider, that hereby they are not excused from a Death, which must be passed through in order to this Resurrection of Life, to live and act in an Immortal Vehicle. There is a Life to be first laid down, which was taken up in *Adam*, contrary to the mind and will of God, and that is now to be expelled again. The Spirit of Christ is come to convince, and to persuade of the absolute necessity hereunto.

### **Why Christ came in Flesh**

[3F 2:11] And whereas it has been doubted whether any can come to know a total Decease from the Life that is Rooted in Original Sin: If there had not been a possibility hereof, God in Christ would never have assumed a Mortal Form, but that thereby He might have an Inroad by His Spirit, still into Depraved Nature, and thereby to work out and destroy the very Essences of Sin, and forever by the Soul's consent and agreement, bind the strong Earthly Life down, and to condemn it into that Dark Abyss, from where it was called forth by the Serpent, and introduced, to the despoiling of that which should have continued a Sinless Image, to go forward in Higher Degrees of Perfection, had *Adam* not revolted from this his First Station. But through the Infinite Love and Compassion of the Father of Immortal Spirits, that are now fallen into Mortal Forms, the Holy Trinity, moved with pity, has revealed and made known the Way, by which the Ruinous State of Fallen Man may be Repaired: Which was shown me by a Similitude representing it in a Threefold-Ground, which my Spirit was carried to view.

### **The Threefold Ground**

[3F 2:12] §.The first which I saw, was a place all Rocky, and Stony, and as a Rude Chaos, where nothing could grow and prosper, that did put forth in that Ground; but there was a Man that Digg'd, and Toiled all Day in it.

[3F 2:13] Then again I was brought in my Spirit into an Enclosed Field, where Trees of various kinds were, some Dry, some Barren, that bare no Fruit, and others that were Green and Flourishing, in a hopeful way to bring forth. And here was seen one with a Pruning-Hook to Trim and Dress this Plantation. He was set to keep it in order, and to cut down the Shrubby Briery matter, that was apt to grow about the Hopeful Plants.

[3F 2:14] Then was I called out here, and a Voice said, Come and see *Paradise* all renewed within the Circle-Line of the Holy Element. And here were Plants of all Colors: and one only Tree did this Ground all over spread, and every Bow richly laden with Fruit.

### **The Mixed Tree**

[3F 2:15] Then was this question asked: *Where is the Mixed Tree of Good and Evil?* And it was answered, That was Extirpated, so as to be found no more. For the Second *Adam* had gone through all Probation, and needed no further Tempting Tree; for all Death was swallowed up in Victory. Here was to be seen Fountain Springs, that circled this Tree round. Nothing of this working or toiling Man appeared in this place. All sprung and grew from virtual Power that opened from the Heavenly Sphere.

## Chapter 3

### January 17, 1678 The Threefold State of Man

[3F 3:1] §.The Holy Unction from this gave me to understand the *Threefold* State we are to pass through, before we can come to recover our Ancient Lost Prerogative of Power and Purity, into which we are now to be Redeemed. The *first* Rocky Ruinous Ground which my Spirit was made to see into, is this Out-Birth of Nature, that is found in a strange property, void of all that good which makes Fruitful. *Adam*, when he was turned out of *Paradise* into the Chaos of this World, was a Glass to himself, in, by, and through which, he might see his own Inward World. For as the Outward, so now was the Inward turned into a Confused, Barren, and Dead Life; the Curse of Sin being found therein; And so from him this Earthly Life has been Generated, as each one comes to be Born into this Principle. *Now what is here to be done in this Ruinous and Unpolished State?* Here certainly He is not to be left in such a Forlorn and Unpolished State. Therefore the Spirit of God was yet left with Man to help him in this State.

### The Inspiration of the Almighty

[3F 3:2] For the Inspiration of the Almighty was still there left in Man, to be Light, Knowledge, and Understanding, that so he might be instructed to New Modelize what now lay in such great disorder, as to his own Internal and External World. As if God should thus speak: O *Adam*, here now is no other way for you, nor your posterity, which you have brought into the same praemunire with yourself, but to set to Work in the Might of that Spirit, that is left for your aid: Now nothing but Diligence, Care, and Painfulness for to prepare a Ground for the Promised Seed to be sown in: and therefore by Hard Labor in the Spirit, this must be followed, till the Stony Rocks of this Principle be removed all out, and the Inward Ground Leavened, and all New Molded; and all superfluities of Self-Love, Haughtiness, and Earthly-mindedness, and the numberless Fruits of Evil, which do all live, and embody themselves in corporeal Nature. These are the Stones and Rocky Mountains, that are to be pulled down, and dissolved, though Soul and Spirit tug hard at it every day, in Bloody Agonies, till there be a Discharging and Clearing of all that which is of a choking, strangling, and binding Nature, to the Springing Seed of the Pure Life.

### The Second Degree

[3F 3:3] §.Which in the *Second* Degree will be augmented in such a way of Spiritual Fruitfulness, as was shown in the Ground which brought forth various Plants and Trees, so that hereby as in a Glass, we may see a good Issue of the Laborer, that has been faithful to rectify and improve, what is found within the Heart of the deep Ground of Nature. The experienced that has gone through this tough and hard Work in the Spiritual Tillage, who are come to Sow, and to Reap the Fruits hereof in the *second* degree, may give encouragement, that all their pains and cost, in suffering by Death often, in watchings, carefulness, and weariness will all turn to a good account. Though they, while they be in this Mortal Life, should not be Transplanted into the Paradisical Sphere.

### The Third Degree

[3F 3:4] Yet forasmuch as they have been preparedly sowing that which is earthly, and contemptible, and corruptible into Death; expecting continually, that what is thus buried by the Baptism of Death, Sorrow, Weakness, Contempt, and Dishonor, shall be raised in a Body of Clarity, Joy, Renown and Honor. If not by way of Transmutation, yet by Expiration of the Elementary Body, to those who are so near arrived to the Third and Last Ministration. These shall enjoy the Glory of it, in, and among the Ancients, who now are in the invisible *Mount-Sion*. Therefore let not such think that they have Wrought or Labored in vain, for whereunto they have attained, and the nearer the Mark they have gone before their Mortal Husk breaks away from them, so much more in readiness, is their bright Sapphire Body for to be put upon them.

### The Dry Sapless Trees

[3F 3:5] §.But it may be questioned, *What are those other sort of dry and sapless Trees that stood in the same Ground?* These were rendered to be such as had run through some work of Regeneration, under the Spirit's Ministration, beginning in great zeal to pluck up, and to throw off every burdensome Stone, that stops the Uprising Life. And for some time they were active in keeping and dressing in good order, that which was internally ruinous and desolate. But it was thus said to me, Do you not see these Fruitless Trees, which are grown to a fair appearance as to the Eye, yet they are Lifeless; because they have been negligent in their Springing Time, by Starving the Root-Life, which should have been their Vigor. Thus it happens to such who stand between Two Worlds, while amity and friendship they would maintain with both, that is, with God and Mammon. But if so divided, what of a Spiritual Husbandry can ever prosper in their Hand? This is a Tillage that can admit of no neglect or slothfulness.

[3F 3:6] Every day brings forth matter of business to employ the Heavenly Fixed Mind upon. That Soul which will not work in this his own Vineyard, must not Eat. *Noah*, after the Flood had destroyed all the Fruits of the Earth, the first thing so soon as he came out of the Ark, was to set upon the Plantation of a Vineyard: Which typified out the making provision for the Spirit to Drink of the Blood of Christ, the Eternal Vine, which in a grown well-ordered Vineyard, and refined out of all pollution, will certainly Spring. But then great Care must be to watch it Night and Day, lest the Beasts of Prey, or those subtle Earthly Spirits do it hurt or annoy. Especially while it is but in its Young Day, before it comes to be thoroughly Rooted and Fixed in the Third Degree, and Center of the Spirit. Therefore let this be a sufficient caution to those who make a fair show in Spiritual Husbandry, but suffer all to lie dead at the Root, so that no Plant can come to Perfection: whereby no Choice and Pure Seed may be saved for Transplantation into its own Native Paradisical Soil again: For now I come to open the Great Secret that was revealed to me.

### How the Mortal Body is Changed

[3F 3:7] §.Wherein it was given me to understand the way how possibly Mortality should sometimes disappear, and be as Anatomized as to material grossness, and changed into a thin, subtle, pure *Ethereal* Vehicle. This I say will be done by a Golden Grain, which was cast from the all Precious Rock of the Deity into Nature's deep Ground. But through the relapse, that so immediately Transmuted *Adam* from the Celestial Body, into this Vile and Mortal One which we now bear, This Divine, Immortal Stone of Purity sunk so deep down into its own Eternal Stillness, that there it rests till it be searched and digged deep for. For all the gross rough Mountainous weight of Sin and Earthliness has laid upon it; so that the awakened Soul hearkens to that Spirit, which strives to make it sen-

sible hereof, that such a Treasury lay hid in it: and proffering its mighty help and aid to remove and throw off all that Sin-pressing Weight, and to overturn Ground upon Ground, till it comes to find out the Center, where this Pearl Seed lay. Then when this is found, as Christ said, the Soul sells and puts off all other Merchandize: It has enough; it needs no more for a Foundation-Stock, to improve both for Time and Eternity. Now thus by virtue of all Spiritual Industry, care, and tenderness of its growth, it grows as Gold grows with a Rough Coat, and Scruffy Matter about it, so at first it grows in a Corruptible form of Humanity. But such is the Nature of it, that it will never leave working, till it has cast off all that cannot pass through Fire, and Air, Rocks, and Stones, answerably to the quality of its own Deified Nature.

[3F 3:8] Thus you are given to know, what is able to bring about this great and wonderful Change upon the despicable Image of Man. The Holy Grain, through all Changes kept, and preserved, and separated out of all Gross Matter, is that, which will become the Root of an Immortal Spirit, Soul, and Body, to make all in One Being, entire in one Incorruptible Figure: All Pure, Clear, Light; Glorious in Spirit, and Glorious in Body. Such a pure perfect Creature will well suit, and become meet to be the Spouse and Bride of the Lamb, to cohabit together in a Paradisical Life, far more excelling, than the First, in as much as this Second is the Lord from Heaven, Heavenly; and will bring up the New Creation, of which He is the beginning and Firstborn into this Principal Royal City of the great God and Father, and the King of those, who are Begotten Again from the Dead, to Reign with Christ their Head Prince, in the Holy and Substantial *Jerusalem*.

**January 18, 1678**  
**An Answer to an Objection Against**  
**the Translated State**

[3F 3:9] §.But aptly here will a further objection be made, saying, *These are true sayings, which agree with the Prophetical Part of the Sacred Scriptures, which are yet to be fulfilled at the Great and General Day, when Christ the Lord shall descend from Heaven with myriads of Angels. Then shall be this great Transmutation of Mortal Bodies: but we do not understand how it can be before, till Christ shall come to overturn and dissolve the whole visible Elementary State of things, and to take unto Him his Kingdom, to reign God Omnipotent over all evermore.*

[3F 3:10] §.As to this Grand Objection, I have received wherewith from the Lord to make answer hereunto; Which is hard and difficult to Utter, it being a New Revealed Thing, which opened itself, since I engaged upon this Subject. But whether it will be received or understood by such who are mighty in the Literal Understanding of the Scriptures, I aim not to be careful to answer, or to set upon any controversy; only writing for my own benefit, and for the benefit of them, who may come to the sharers with me, in this more Excellent and Transforming Dispensation. Which the Spirit of Jesus my Lord, has impressed with Almighty Power, and set firmly home, by a marvelous Light of Revelation, to which I am made to bow and believe, according as I have heard and learned of Jesus. Who now being present in Spirit, can best open His own Dark and Parabolical sayings; the proper meaning and sense being shut up, till the Spirit was come to open them.

**Examples: Paul and John**

[3F 3:11] I shall now make out, what particular and private Manifestation has opened in this matter, to be also agreeable to the Scripture record: as has been made out, If there be nothing of this great Change to happen, upon some hereunto especially Elected, till the great general Day of Judgment,



when as the visible Elements shall pass away, and the World all broken up, then all Flesh will in it expire, and none be preserved to meet Christ, in His distinct and personal Revelation and Coming, which in its time will be shown. But before this, the Spirit does affirm as a Truth, He will come in His Kingdom to some, and so open their own Heavens as He will both Descend and Ascend in, and from them, till they shall know the Great Mystery of Translation, out of the Earthly into the very Heavens: where *Paul* and *John* were since Christ's Ascension, both were caught up in Spirit, and saw His Glory, and heard the Voice of His Mouth. Paul the Apostle did not at that time know himself in a Mortal Form, though after he came down into it again. He had then such a Divine Sense of Immortal Clothings, as he ever after desired to reach the Resurrection-State, and to have Mortality swallowed up in Life. And whether he did reach this Mark in his Day, or the rest of the Apostles, we have no Visible Record to resolve us, and so can bring no Precedent, as from them; which is not at all to stumble, us, who now are not to look back, but forward, and to expect this Perfect Thing, that can change this Corruptible into Incorruptibleness.

### The Timing

[3F 3:12] But the great Question is *When? Whether before Christ's Visible and Last Great Appearance?* That is the thing to be resolved. Which according as I have received, so shall I demonstrate it, not only as a Private Revelation, but from a Scripture, that admits of such an interpretation; which is Rev. 20:4: *I saw the Souls that were Beheaded for the Witness of Jesus, and for the Word of God, which had not Worshipped the Beast, neither his Image, or received his Mark upon their Foreheads or Hands. These were they that Lived and Reigned with Christ a Thousand Years.*

### The Great Controversy

[3F 3:13] Now consider here is a State peculiar to some that were passed from or over Death, into Immortality of Life, and they are made Priests, to go In and Out of the Most Holy and Inward Tabernacle; And Kings, to Reign over the Earth, as they have been kept under and reigned over by the Earth. I know this has been generally interpreted by most that expect Christ's Personal coming in a Distinct Glorious Humanity, to manifest His Kingdom in this Principle. There is a Great Controversy about it, some believing this Reign will be before the Fabric of this Principle is to be quite Dissolved; Others that it will quite finish the Whole Mystery, and Fix the Everlasting Kingdom, so as Time shall be no more. I shall not take upon me to decide anything of it, more than what is given me from a Good Hand to know. I have learned to interfere with no one's Light, but to wait immediately upon the Springing Testimony of Jesus, who thus opened this Vision which *John* saw.

### Identity of the Holy Priesthood

[3F 3:14] First who these Persons were, that should Reign in and over the Earth? They were those that had suffered their Head-Life to be taken from them, not by an outward Visible Martyrdom, but by Cutting of that Head, in which the Serpent had introduced the whole working Motion of the Evil of Sin and Earthliness: Such being convinced that this kind of Spiritual Martyrdom must be undergone, for the Living Word, and Testimony sake, that so through this Internal Death, they might cease to bear the Image and Mark of the Beast in themselves, or to pay any homage to it in others. No way to be free, but by falling upon the very Head-Life thereof, that so the Soul being Separated from here, and being Acquitted from the Gross Evil effects of a Body of Sin, and stands as a Naked and Abstracted Spirit, such as these were shown to me to be of the First Resurrection, whom no Mortal Death could have no Power over. This is that Sinless Holy Priesthood, that will precede before

Christ's Visible Appearance. And whereas it is said they should Reign with Christ, that is, with His Life of the same Purity, Power, and Sufficiency to act and do all Great and Mighty Wonders, as if He was in His own Distinct Person of Glory, manifested upon the Earth. The Key of the Government shall be entrusted and laid upon the Shoulder of those who are Dead and Risen with Christ their Head. These are to put on their Spiritual Bodies.

### The Threefold Coming of Christ

[3F 3:15] Now it was given me to understand, that there is a Threefold Coming of Christ, besides His First Coming in the Flesh. After which, before He left the World, He engaged, that He would come again in Spirit to His own that were in it. This has been accomplished, and this was His Second Coming. Upon which we have lived, and spent upon this Stock of Life, ever since His Departure. I mean such who for this Worthy Gift have with great seeking obtained it. The Apostles had this more richly and abundantly, as to the manifold working by Powers and Gifts, than any since. But yet they were still looking out for His Next Coming in Spirit. For by His Spirit He was to make meet and ready; that the Inward Spirit, with his Mind, Will and Senses should be all internally transformed (as the New Testament runs much upon it): to be found Sinless, Spotless, and Blameless against the Coming of the Lord. And what is to be done now, at this His Second, or it may be called His Third Coming, but to change our Vile Bodies, and to fashion them like unto His own Glorious Body, by that Power which shall open the Element, which the Celestial Body shall evermore consist of. Christ's Third Coming will be to this purpose, to Redeem Bodies out from all those Evil events that Sin brought in, that so every Spirit may come to have its own Native Body, and that the Spirit may no longer draw one way, and the Flesh another.

[3F 3:16] But surely that saying will forever cease: *To Will is present, but Power is wanting to perform.* For all Power will be given to His Saints, as it was unto our Lord Jesus. As *Daniel* foresaw the Dominion should be given to the Saints of the Most High. Such a Royal, Holy, Peculiar Church shall that be: the Firstborn from the Dead, fitly qualified to join with the Heavenly Quire in Heavenly Places. These are those that will be the Pure and Wise Virgins, that are all-ready; as the Bride of the Lamb, to meet Him at His Last General Call and Trumpet sound to them, which shall be at this His Third Coming: Who shall not prevent the descending down of those who are Departed in the Faith, and are now in the Invisible *Mount-Sion*. They shall appear again with Christ in this Principle, in Spirits and Bodies all Celestial. Then the Great Overturn in this Visible World will be for those New Heavens and Earth to be known, and the Old Visible Heavens and Elements to pass away; and all Flesh with them to be consumed. For here will be no place for Terrestrial Bodies, when this Great Day will come, that will Burn as an Oven.

### The Return of Noah and Elijah

[3F 3:17] This is that Great General Conflagration, that the Apostle *Peter* speaks of, wherein the Earth, and all the Works thereof shall be Burnt Up, and the Judgment will be passed and pronounced against those who are found as those in *Noah's* Time, whom the Flood took away, but here the Fiery Indignation will make the Terrible Dissolution in the Whole Visible Frame of this World. And for all those Inhabitants who were in Love and Friendship with it, as it stood in the Sin and Curse, this will be a Dreadful Day to overtake such. For there will be great distress, as our Lord foretells, as never was. *But upon whom will it come to hurt?* Only them which are found out of the Ark. For I must let you know from that Spirit that reveals things to come, that before the Last General Day of Judgement shall come, this Deluge shall come at Christ's Third Coming, and Another Mighty *Noah* will be

found, who in and by Faith shall raise and build an Ark, which no Flames can devour, no more than the Waters could prevail upon the first Ark. *Elijah* with his Fiery Chariot will also come before this Great and Notable Day of Christ's Third Coming, to show some the Way to escape out of this Corporal State, into that other Principle of the One Pure Eternal Element; From where the Lord, the Mighty God and Savior, with all His Saints, in His time will be revealed.

### **The Golden Celestial Ark**

[3F 3:18] But know that in this Latter Day, when Christ shall appear, there will be such an Ark, that will be all of Refined Gold, for a Harbor, and as a City, upon which the Name of Everlasting Life, Power, and Might will be written; whereinto the Wise and Prudent will take Sanctuary, as foreseeing the Destruction that will come upon all Flesh. Therefore those, who as *Noah* are warned of this Surprisal Day, take certain instructions from the Lord's Mouth, how to prepare this Celestial Ark, and to bring in thereinto such who are willing to wait in truth and soberness in this Body of the Golden Ark, having put off the Body of the Sins of the Flesh, and as Pure Naked Abstracted Spirits, are free from all entanglements of the Earthly Life. These are here ready to be received and to be clothed upon with this House that can stand in the midst of all burnings.

[3F 3:19] Such a Spouse and Bride will verily be ever waiting for the Bridegroom, in a perfect Virgin-Life, Separated, and Redeemed from amongst Men, as minding no other thing, but to be Trimming their Lamps, and making themselves all-ready in Pure and White Robes, wherein no Spot of Pollution may be found. For verily the Heavens shall not any longer contain the Lord Christ, when the Temple-Body and Ark is rebuilt for His presence, and till His Saints do look out for His Appearance. For this was the Posture which the Saints of Old labored to put themselves into, upon the hopes of this His Personal Coming, to take to Him the Whole Dominion, and to deliver up the Kingdom to His Father, all in Transparent Purity. Every Subject in it attired and put into a Suitable Habit for immediate entrance into the Inward and Most *Holy Jerusalem*, where God will fill all in all.

### **A Translation before Christ's Fourth Coming**

[3F 3:20] But you will say, *All this is granted, that when Christ comes to His Last Judgment, our Vile Bodies will be changed; and then He will make us meet to see His Father's Face, when the Kingdom shall then be Perfectly Restored. But you affirm that there will be a Translation at Christ's Third coming, before His Fourth and Last Coming to Judgment.* Yea, and I shall aver it, knowing the True and Infallible Testator that witnesses it. For these Firstborn Spirits will have Power in them, by His Inward risen Body, to figure out according to pleasure, a Visible One, agreeable to the Lord's own Body, or else they could not lift up their Heads with that joy, when He shall come to Transmute this Principle. Know it therefore for a certainty, that the Lord will have a Pure and Spotless Church upon the Earth, that before the General Day of Judgment, shall have the Keys of the Power, yea of the Transmuting Power too, as all *Ethereal*, to Ascend and Descend.

[3F 3:21] And they will be in such Purity and Separation from all of this Corrupt Element, that they will frequently be admitted to the Holy Trinity, to know the Celestial Affairs belonging to their own Kingdom, and hereof declare, that many thereat may be converted, and may be received into the Golden Ark, there still to wait in a devoted Life from the World. For whoever they be, that shall not fully agree to this, and totally depart from the whole Earthly Life, and live in an absolute Virgin-State, knowing nothing more, according to that first Man that degenerated from His Creator, I do know this, that without such a full leave be taken of this Worldly Conversation, there will be no part

for them in this matter. For this Life of the Resurrection never springs, until the Earthly pass away. Oh, these are hard sayings, indeed, because of the Destruction of Flesh, the Losing of Life; that we might not taste at all of Death. *Where in this Age shall we find Five Wise Virgins?* That have parted with all things that are drossy and impedimental for God, and go on making ready the Pure Body-Ark, that in it they may be able to move upon the Fiery Element: who have hereunto disposed, and given up themselves to be in Election for this High, Holy, Christ-dignified State.

### The Hope of our Calling

[3F 3:22] But it may be objected: *If we should put ourselves to this loss in friends, honors, riches, and all that is pleasant and Lawful, and come to live a life that is all dead to this World: yet we are not sure that it may be our Lot, to be thus clothed upon with our Immortal Vehicle, to hold us out to the Coming of our Lord.* As to this receive what the Spirit answered my own Heart's Objection: §. Whether or not (said the Spirit) you may hereunto reach, yet the nearer you come unto it, though your Mortal Body should break before the attainment hereunto, you will thereby lose nothing. For you will the sooner be Clothed with them according to that Degree that has been wrought here. And then again we shall have this advantage by this Holy and Unrebukable Life, we shall have the most free and familiar Society with the Sacred Trinity, that loves to frequent those who, for the Love of God, have wholly rent themselves from this World; giving Sufficient Proof that they neither Love nor Regard anything, but what may dispose and qualify them for High Love-Communion with God their Creator. Which I can so far assure, may in great tranquility be now enjoyed, according to what I have received, through Inward Transformation of Mind and Heart.

### The True Body

[3F 3:23] §. The Kingdom of God opens and springs first from the Golden Ark refined within, where Christ, the True *Noah*, will gather in all to Himself. For where the True Body is, both for Food and Shelter, thereunto the Sprightful Eagles will surely resort. It will be worth our while here to wait, in all Pure Sequestration of Mind, though we know not for certainty who of us may come unto this High Celestiality, as to be found in the Risen Body of Immortality. But let it suffice, that this is the Hope of our High-Calling; and we have liberty to draw out the Bow of Faith, and Shoot at all adventure, if by any means we may come to reach this Mark. Faith is that great and mighty Energy, which may bring to effect for us this Translation: therefore the Spirit of it, we are incited to cherish, and keep up with all care and tenderness, concerning that by Faith *Enoch* was Translated, so as he saw not Death. It has various purifying properties, from whence will come mighty Powerful actings also, for the accomplishing of the last days Wonders.

### The Transmuting Stone

[3F 3:24] §. Thus I have been unexpectedly carried out upon this Subject, wherein I have obeyed the Vision, upon which all this Mysterious and Deep Matter did open. The Hand of Love and Power, which did guide me to Record it in Writing, may have some service for it in its time; yea for some, who have right to the Precious Thing made mention of, so as happily they may find this Weighty Transmuting Stone. The worth thereof may be so great and valuable in their Eye, as with us, they may not think much to suffer and endure loss of Life: I mean that Life which conflicts in the Friendship, Honor, Pleasures, Riches of this evil World: and to wind out and estrange themselves from all of this Perishing and Polluted State, must first be resolved upon by such, who shall willingly join with us in Faith, to attain this Pure Body-Ark, now before the Flood comes.

[3F 3:25] Therefore let us be preparing with all speed, for to testify we are none of those Slothful Ones, that here take ease upon a Bed of Thorns, and as being all over beset with a Dark and Cloudy Night of the Fall: Concluding the Lord may yet delay His Coming, because that all things ever since His Departure have continued at a stay, and we have heard little from Him since *John's* Revelation, that might stir and awaken us up. Upon which, those who are in Love and Reconciliation to this Evil and this Embondaged State, do very aptly make these kinds of Evil conclusions. But let us remember that Word of our Dear Lord, who said, *Behold I come as a Thief in the Night*. Therefore He had warned us again and again, we should never be found off our Watch.

### The Three Watches

[3F 3:26] For after His First Coming, He has set Three Watches before us, wherein we might expect Him. The One is past; Two more are yet to come. His Coming in Spirit has, and is still witnessed. But now this His Third Coming is that which is more excellent, and will produce more wonderful effects, as preceding the Great and Last Day, when the Universal Judgment shall be passed upon both Quick and Dead: according as it is Written: *He has appointed a Day, in which He will judge the World in Righteousness*. This we are not to look for, till the First Resurrection is past, upon whom the Second Death can have no Power. Now what more forcible Argument can I use, to persuade myself and others, to this Pure Abstracted and World-Denying Life, but what the Lord Himself has done, for encouragement to this Watchful State, having pronounced Blessedness to it, as it is written: *Blessed are those, who when the Lord comes, shall be found watching* (Luke 12); that when He knocks, they may open immediately without any demur, having their Loins girded about and their Lamps Burning: Which implies all in a readiness, entire, wanting nothing.

[3F 3:27] They need not a serious Call, being found in a Waiting Posture, and swift to hear the Bridegroom's Voice. Our Lord professes, that He will be so affected with them, who shall in such Love and Long Patience approve themselves Diligent Watchers, that so by His expression, He knows not what enough to do for them. But cries, *Verily your Lord shall gird Himself, and make you to sit down at Meat, and come and serve you and also make you Stewards of great things*. Oh, who would not now think it worth losing and leaving all, and waiting together in a Pure Life of Introversion, out of the noise and multiplicity of the Earthly rudiments, of a World that lies wholly in Pollution and Deceit. Oh, Come, come, let us draw away and be found in those Goodly Tents of *Jacob*, waiting till all the Shadows of this Long Night of our Lord's Absence shall break away; who knows how suddenly He may appear, to such who are found in a Bridal-Habit, all pure and spotless. Let us make it our only business and care to prepare for His Coming. Then assuredly He will not from us long tarry. Oh Lord Jesus, even so come quickly to us, as the *Alpha* and *Amen*.

## Chapter 4

### January 22, 1678 Renovation of Youth

[3F 4:1] §.In the fore part of the Night, all Internal Powers of my Mind were introverted, and acted forth in Prayer, for our Spirits going forward in the Vineyard Work, and to be enabled to endure the heat of the Day in it. And I was considering how our Days were run, and our Bodies like Flowers were fading and declining, having daily the foregoing strokes of Mortal Death upon them. Therefore I had a deep sense and concern for myself and my Aged Friend, herein to take all advantage of the present time, lest we should be prevented of what we so much have desired to reach unto. Being vehement in prayer for it, I had this Word: If you do believe for it with a Perfect Heart, and wait and turn not aside, though your Bones as a Potsherd be dried up, yet Marrow and Strength shall be renewed in another degree of Youth, than what has been comprehended. Therefore keep yourselves only from the Sickness of Sin, and you need fear nothing else.

### January 28, 1678 The Womb of the Morning, and the Dew of Youth

[3F 4:2] §.This Word was opened to me: From the Womb of the Morning, you have the Dew of Youth. The Morning signifies the Day breaking away from the Night, and so becomes a clear and distinct Light without Clouds, the Everlasting Sun rising, to disperse all. Now this was shown me to be that Light, which breaks through the Darkness of our Minds, and becomes as an Enclosed Womb, where the Pure Life is conceived. For the Dew of this Morning-break makes it spring, as a tender Herb in a fresh and youthful power. And upon some occasion of fear and concern that was upon me for the Doctor, as to this Visible Body declining through Age, and a spending pernicious cough that I saw inwardly might impair his strength, and thereby stop the Spring of Celestial Fire. All which evil consequences I feared might him devour. This was made applicable to him, that from this Eternal Morning-Womb his youth might spring and renew again, through the Distilling Dew falling from the Celestial Element. Though his outward life did seem to be breaking away, yet through earnest Faith and Prayer, this Healing and Recovering Dew may be brought down for his repair, and overthrow the malignity of the Stars. Therefore strive together in prayer, till you stir up both Fire and Air, that you may have Dominion over all conspiracies in Divine Power.

### February 1, 1678 An Alarm of the Spirit to the Friends of the Bridegroom

[3F 4:3] §.This Voice cried in my ears this first of *February*: Awake, awake, be putting on of your Body of Strength. Sleep not in security as others do; for distress in all Nations is coming: Need here will be for some to be made meet to go, and pour out Salvation-Oil, that so a Remnant may be preserved, as Anointed Priests, to carry the Golden Ark into the Most Holy Tabernacle, that is within the Veil. Oh, this *Alarm of the Spirit*, called the Friends of the Bridegroom, to awaken watchfulness, lest we should be included in the common calamity, on such a Black and Gloomy Day, as is assuredly

coming upon the whole Terrestrial Frame of things. Therefore this Trumpet-Voice has sounded in my Ears, to stir up, and to be looking after that Munition Rock of Strength, wherein at all such perilous times, we may know our Hiding as a House which none of these Outward Storms can shake, nor the noise of a Warrior make afraid.

[3F 4:4] Verily it was opened unto me, that there was such a Body of Might and Strength coming down for help to shield off all that is of Man's insolence and fury. And further it was noted to me, that in this Last Troublesome Time, that Fire-Ball will kindle throughout all Nations, whereby they shall consume and devour one another. But there will be given again the Immaculate Body to some, for a distinguishing and Sealing Mark, over which the Destroying Angels of Judgment will have Power, no more than the Lions had over *Daniel*, though in the very Den with them. These are of the Ransomed Ones that shall walk to and fro in the midst of Slaughter, and not be hurt, but preserved as Lot was, in the midst of a Burning *Sodom*, for a Righteous Seed that shall replenish the Earth again, after Judgment has done its work.

### The Mystery of Faith

[3F 4:5] §.But this may be objected: *But what assurance shall we have for this? Seeing that in all these Later Ages the Righteous has been swept away with the Wicked in a general Calamity: How is it that now more security may be expected?* As to this I shall answer in plainness, according to that Revelation that was given upon this Trumpet's sounding in me: Why now more to be expected than formerly? Because the Mystery of Faith now begins to open, and work in a far more excellent and higher degree, in such who are Decreed in the Lamb's Book of Life, to be Saviors upon *Mount-Sion*. In whom the Spirit of *Elijah* and *Elisha* will arise for miraculous defense and deliverance, though visible armies shall every way cast a trench, and round beset them. Yet these, upon whom the Life-Mark is Sealed, shall escape through all, and make their way through all Weapons of War. For their Armor will be of the Celestial Mettle: therefore all, who are only found in Sinful Mortal forms, will be too weak and fruitless to push against them.

### Eight Principle Shepherds

[3F 4:6] This you will say *is an Extraordinary Visible Salvation indeed; how shall we come to know ourselves to be numbered hereunto?* Truly so far as it is given me to know, I shall not shun to declare. I well know that this will be appropriated to a Few Names, who shall be raised up, as the Eight Principal Shepherds who are prophesied of, to be Shelters, so appointed by that One Great Shepherd; Who takes care of His humble and meek Lambs, who are scattered upon the Mountains of Prey: and will choose some Highly Graduated and Illuminated Ones, to personate His Power and Presence here upon the Earth, for the succor and help of those who are yet of a Lower Stature and Growth, in the True Vine of Life. That they may be preserved, to be sown for a choice Royal Seed, for the New Creation, that will suddenly be manifested after this hot brunt of Tribulation.

### Separation from Worldly Matters

[3F 4:7] §.Upon which account, it will be worth living out the Storm that will come in general upon all Nations. Now the same Counsel, which was inspired into me, I freely impart to my Fellow Branches of the same Life-Tree. First that we haste and come out and be Separated in Spirit, Mind, and Body, and have no more to do with that Worldly Conversation, that deflowers our Nazarite Life, and to avoid by a pure and resolved sequestration, from what the Spirit of this Principle judges lawful

and necessary for making provision for the outward. The pretense of which has stifled the Birth-Life of the Spirit in Millions of Souls, by fettering and entangling themselves in the multiplicity of Earthly affairs: None whose minds stand divided between Two Principles, can expect to be enrolled among that Number, for whom this Visible Salvation is prepared. The true Heirs of the Kingdom, mind nothing to load themselves withal, further than what is required for Absolute Necessity: till they shall have little further occasion, either for Mortal Food or Clothing; whereto they are following hard to obtain, through the Resurrection from the Dead: a State that is yet to be revealed.

### Separation from Forms of Worship

[3F 4:8] Then again it was by the Holy One further cautioned, that we should not only come out of the Immersements with these Gross Pollutions from the Spirit of the World, but here is a Call out of the mode of a fine spun dress, in matters tending to a Religious Form of Worship: wherein a great degree of Spiritual Idolatry has been committed, against the True Tabernacle-Witness; mixing in the Holy Place, which has long been covered over with a Purple Veil: and though it is given to some to see through it, and understand that *Babylon* has there set her foot. Yet at present all those Formal Gatherings bear away the renown of Christ's Discipline, which Veil before long will assuredly be rent away.

[3F 4:9] Therefore, all who have crept under it for shelter, draw off from it, and seek out for that Perfect Temple-Body, that will be raised up about you, where the Holy Ghost shall officiate all for you powerfully. There can be no jealousy of mixture in any of your Offerings. Much more I could further declare on this subject, but this may suffice for to caution the Spiritual Wise, who may learn what may instruct us from the Spirit's Alarm; that so we may be fitly qualified in all these respects, for such an Eminent Preservation from the Overflowing Scourge. Let time no longer slip away, but set upon *Noah's* Work day by day, and thereby convince the World that we foresee its destruction. And therefore we are taking our leave beforehand, that so we may be taken into a more stable Kingdom. To which, Dear Jesus, *do Thou bring us!*

### February 5, 1678 A Commemoration of My Widowhood

[3F 4:10] §.This Day being the Seventh Year of my Widowhood, since the decease of my Husband; which day I commemorate by keeping it Holy to God, my Everlasting Husband, from whom no Death can separate me. Considering in my mind that now the Seventh Year was expired, wherein I had waded through many Deep Trials, and passing through many Vicissitudes in this Time, wherein great proof I have still had, of the never fading Love of my God, as to outward distress and difficulties: Provision still has been made for me, as disappointments happen for my outward support; my great fear and concern being lest the necessity for my Corporeal Life, should distress and prevent the rising of my Spiritual Life, which has been my only care to keep up. For which my God has now sent in a suitable shelter, that so we might proceed forward in what is yet behind, that the whole Scene relating to the utmost of a Redeemed State may be known by us, whose Spirits are in true Conjunction herefore. After this consultation the Spirit ministered this Word to me: You shall no more be termed Desolate or Forsaken, for your Widowhood shall be turned into a Virgin Solacement, because the Lord your Maker has pleasure in you; For as much as you have cleaved with all your Heart unto Him, in this Seven Years Probation-Day. Oh my Lord shall I now come to Inherit such Grace and Mighty Love, and Espousal Joy, in the Life of Spiritual Virginity. Oh Jesus, so let it be.



**February 6, 1678**  
**The Body of Sin Sacrificed**

[3F 4:11] §.Perceiving now the whole Ministration of the Spirit terminates in the putting an End to Sin, this Word of Instruction was further given, saying: For this cause you need to sanctify yourselves, through the Offering of the Body, wherein the motions of Sin stir and make War; For till that be taken out of the way, you cannot expect to bring the Firstborn of a Virgin-Body for a Peace-Offering to your Lord and King. Therefore cease to corrupt yourselves with Dead Things, which aim to kill your Superior Life, which is your Living Sacrifice that you can only bring to God.

**February 7, 1678**  
**Weights and Measures**

[3F 4:12] §.This Word as soon as I awaked in the Morning spoke in me: Diverse Weights and a False Balance is an Abomination unto the Lord, which Word opened itself thus: That from this we were to consider by what Weight we had weighed ourselves, and also the Rule we had measured ourselves by. If not by the Golden Weight or Shekel of the Sanctuary, we should be found too light: For that was the Coin that would only pass for currency in that Heavenly Country. For while we measure ourselves, by anything short of that full Golden Weight, it would be excepted against by that Just One, who holds the Balance of Perfection in His Hand.

[3F 4:13] §.Therefore upon trial, we must daily see what Golden Grains must be further added, that there may be an all equal proportion to the Golden Shekel, that is put on the Scale, to prove the Weight of our Spirits. Which being found according to the Divine Rule, then the Inscription of the Mighty *Caesar* will be impressed upon us, by which Tribute shall be paid from all Nations, as not only Bearing the Title, but the Power and Presence of our Lord, and Great King Jesus. This was the interpretation the Spirit gave from that Word unto me, with a Charge: That we should have serious regard unto the teaching hereof.

**February 8, 1678**  
**The Motion of the Earth**

[3F 4:14] §.In the Night my Spirit had a representation of the frame of the whole Earth, in the Compass of a Globe, which moved, as sometimes I have observed the Clouds working in the Air, before a Shower of Rain comes. So did the Earth work and move in a Restless Motion. And those Inhabitants that were found upon it, stood shaking and tottering, and could find no standing thereupon, so that there was great perplexity upon all. And my Spirit cried, Ah Lord, what shall these do? And it was answered: There is a Rock, which from all Ages has stood Unmovable. The Name thereof is *Jehovah*, where only is sure footing. You who do know it, will thereto fly, and draw others after you.

**February 9, 1678**  
**A Transport Out of the Gross Earthy Body**

[3F 4:15] §.In the Morning after I was awaked from Sleep, upon a sudden I was insensible of any sensibility as relating to a Corporeal Being, and found myself as without the Clog of an Earthly Body, being very sprightly and airy in a Silent Place, where some were beside me, but I did not know them by their Figures, except one, who went out, and came in again. And there was no speaking one to another, but all did set in great silence. And I myself with my Eye fixed forward, suddenly I did see at a pretty distance, a rich Splendorous Thing come down, all Engraved with Colors, the Ground thereof

being all of Gold. It was in the form of a Large Ship with Wings, whether more than four I cannot say, which spread themselves out, being like varnished Gold. It came down with the greatest swiftness as is imaginable. Upon which amazing sight, I asked some by me: Do you not see this wonderful sight? And they said no. But I saw myself, or something like myself, leaping and dancing and greatly rejoicing to meet it. But when I came up to it, then it did as suddenly go up again, withdrawing out of all sight, unto the High Orb from which it came. After which I found myself in my Body of Sense, as knowing I had been ranging in my spirit from it for a while, that I might behold this Great Thing.

### **February 10, 1678 The Interpretation of this Vision**

[3F 4:16] §.Then came the opening Word unto me, to reveal this Vision, and give me to understand the Signification of this Presentation, denominated it to be the Glorious Ark, which the Heavens has contained, in which the Everlasting Gospel-Testimony has been Sealed Up; which should as surely descend, as I did see it in Vision. For it was the Glory, that should gather in all of the New Creation, with whom the New Covenant should be established, wherein each one shall come to know God in, and from this Living Testimony, that will open in the Body of the Divine Presence, where God will be known. While this into the Heavens has been taken, the Glory and Power of the Deity has departed from us. Although the Spirit has been for our Comforter and Teacher: and as the Dove brought out from the Ark an Olive Branch of Peace, so the Spirit has often brought forth good tidings, of our Warfare accomplishing, and the Ark of His Presence returning, which has kept us up in good Hope, that at its Next Appearance, not only a Spirit, but a Body all communicative will be given. It is such a Body in to which no Sin can thrust itself: this only can declare the Full and Perfect Redemption.

[3F 4:17] §.For this observe that a Spirit without a Body cannot act, but in such a Body as what is after its own kind; I mean flowingly without stop, and all powerfully without resistance. Therefore the Spirit of our Lord Jesus has yet a difficult and hard word to effect, because He has to do with a Heavy Gross, Sluggish Body: into which the Evil One can yet send in Deadly Fumes, and Dark Rays, making War and Strife, having all aid from this Terrestrial World, to bring in what would wound and depress the Spirit of the Mind: that would be all single to God, if it had but an Agreeable Body, answerable to its rising Light, by virtue of its right Eye-Salve, that has been applied by the Holy teaching Uncion. By which it is convinced of a necessity, for having arrived to this Degree of Wisdom and Understanding, as now to know, that notwithstanding this whole Visible Corporeal Body, wherein the Sin has stirred, yet the Spirit is naked: for nothing of this is of its own clothing.

### **The White Raiment**

[3F 4:18] It is therefore that Christ warns to get on the White Raiment, lest He should come and find them Naked, and unready to enter with Him to the Wedding-Supper. Now of this very rarely any has understood or been persuaded to look into, and to search out the Mystery of it. Therefore we need not marvel, that the Living Body of the Ark has to none yet descended, for the powerful might of the Spiritual Presence to act forth itself in, and by. And truly it is but yet young days, since it has been given unto us, for to believe and hope, that the same Spirit which raised our Lord Jesus His Dead Body, shall also give a Quickening Life to ours: whereby all those impediments of dullness, deadness, and ponderosity, by reason of Trespasses and Sins, shall be done away.

### **Offering Up the Body of Sin**

[3F 4:19] But you will say: *By what means can it be possibly so Perfect as to have no more conscience of Sin?* Why for this, take to that, and join with that Spirit, that is not only come to Convince

of Sin, but is come also (with the help and consent of our own spirits) to destroy and utterly take away, by offering up the Body of the Sins of the Flesh, once for all and forever, that so we might not still continue Offering, in such a divided weak way, ministering still the same Lamé and Imperfect Sacrifices, that can never take away Sin, but still there is matter of remembrance and complaints made. For indeed it is not possible that Iniquity should be Purged, till this Offering by the Atoning Blood be made in us through the Eternal Spirit; Which prepares room for the Most Holy Tabernacle Clothing to be put upon us, in which the Daily Sacrifices for Transgression shall cease, and the Perfect Ministry be brought into the Temple-Body of the Holy Ghost.

### The Ark of the Presence

[3F 4:20] Then New Offerings of another kind, without Spot or Blemish, we shall bring to our God. And as Separated Ones, and as Anointed Priests, we shall bear the Ark of the Presence of the Most Holy, and thereby be secured from all Evils. For it is the very Body of God, wherein He will appear in omnipotency as of old, whom the typical Ark did present in *Moses* and *Joshua's* Days. How did that present the Mighty Wonder Working God of the whole Earth and Heavens? What was able to stand before it? When it did move and rise, was it not a terror to the Lord's Enemies, but a Shelter and a Defense of Glory to His Chosen Heritage? If the typical Body of the Most Holy Being was such a blessing in the Earth in its day, what will the Real Body itself come to be, in a Sacred Transparency, brought forth into a Manifestation?

[3F 4:21] It need not be doubted, but Mighty and Marvelous things will be wrought in this very Earth, by such whose lot shall be to take in this Real Heavenly Ark. *David* might well rejoice when the Figure of this Ark was brought into the City of *David*: for God still made Himself known in a Signal Way of Blessing. So it is to be understood, that God will have constituted such a Representative for Himself on the Earth, for a Most Holy Spiritual Body, where at inquiry may be made, for the Living Testimony is God there Himself. This is the Glory *Isaiah* prophesied of, even in that very time, when thick and gross darkness was as a covering spread upon the people: but upon some Chosen Out. The Lord in the Ark of His Strength, and Brightness of His Rising will be seen, for the bringing in His Sons and Daughters from afar, that so under the Covert and Wings of the Everlasting Ark, they may be Nursed and brought up, to Inhabit with the High and Holy One, in the City that is all *Salvation*.

### The Blessing of our Day

[3F 4:22] It may well be worth spending our Time, and separating our Minds, and Dividing our whole Hearts, from what is no better than a poor Ark of Reeds and Bull Rushes, in which has been our present Harbor, that is so slender a shelter, that every Weight crushes it, and the Earthly Northern Winds blowing, suddenly blast upon it. Therefore let us, according as I did see a few in the Vision, be found in a holy serious posture, waiting for this our Body-Ark of Invincible Might and Strength. Who knows but it may open and become the Blessing of our Day, while we are in a Fixed Spirit looking out for it, owning and professing ourselves to be as a Spirit without a Body, Naked and Powerless; And are not able to work the mighty deeds, that are proper to them, whose Spirits are in such high and near alliance to God: and should show it forth somewhat in a more eminent manner, as appearing in Another Fashion, and carrying a greater presence of Power, Wisdom, and Glory. Plainly hereby declaring, we are of those who expect the Adoption, to wit, the Ark of this Divine Powerful Body, in which we may perfect Holiness and Redemption, according to the will of our Lord Jesus.

## Chapter 5

### February 11, 1678 The Fountain Blood\*

[3F 5:1] §.This Word was brought to me, upon the Meditation of the Divine Body: Would you be found in the Nazarite Beauty, all fair and clear, without the Dark and Cloudy Body of Sin? Then for this roll yourselves in the Fountain Blood, that is open. Only this can give the Pure White Luster, that will commend you to the Open Face of God, who are here so solicitous for it.

### February 12, 1678 Rehoboth\*

[3F 5:2] §.Be choice and tender to your deep Springing Well, that is within your own Ground. If either Stones or Earth do fall thereinto, you will know its Springs will Fail, and then your Spirits will be in drought. Therefore watch to keep out all clods of Earth that would stop your Bubbling Well of Life. Which the Philistine Spirits are in strife for; but *Isaac's* Spirit will not give way to them, till he comes to *Rehoboth*, the Land of Fruitfulness.

### February 14, 1678 Winter Fruit: or, the Two Flig Birds

[3F 5:3] §.In the Night I had this Vision: I saw myself enclosed in a place with Walls, and upon them there was Trees that had spread themselves, and were tacked to the Wall, as a Vine is. And there was such large pleasant Fruit upon it that I did much admire, because of the present Winter-Season. But they were so Luscious that I did much desire to taste of them, for it was of such a kind, as I had not formerly seen, nor known. Now there was a Man set to keep this Place and Fruit, and he was unknown to me, so that I could not tell how to entrust myself in him, but walked up and down by the Wall, but could not ask for any. For I believed they were of great value; and were preserved by a great art, as I understood by him, ever since the Summer's growth, and reserved fresh, and fresh to be plucked for them, to whom they did belong. But the Keeper, seeing me so eye the Fruit, told me these Fruits were of a strange and wonderful Nature, and were beyond what I could imagine them to be. So he took Two Flig<sup>2</sup> Birds, that were Nestled in the Tree, and cut them in the midst, and gave one of them to me, and when I had it, being Hot and Bloody, as I had it in my Hand, it changed itself into such a fair Luscious Fruit, as I did see upon the Tree, and I did eat thereof, and it was very pleasant. The other Bird, he told me was reserved for another. But before I did see who it was, I came out of the Vision.

[The interpretation of this Vision was given by the Spirit twelve days after; being very considerable, which see in its place, February 26.]

---

<sup>2</sup> SDV Note: "Flig bird" is an obsolete term for a bird that can fly. (Google Generative AI.)

**February 15, 1678**  
**The Mixed, or Twofold State**

[3F 5:4] §.Being upon a deep examination of the Twofold State, in which I found my Spirit a Passenger far more agreeable to the Heavenly than to the Earthly, which is now tiresome and burdensome in all its necessary consequences, relating to Corporeity. But how to avoid and get off from here was my great concern. The rational Mind and Senses being suited in all things, for this mean Degree of Life, having to sustain a Body Elementary, for which is required such exercises of the Mind therein, that else would rise more sublimely, than to be careful for a gross corruptible Being, as knowing it must be put off or changed, before the Soul can live with God joyfully, or without interruption. Now what to do, but like *Paul*, I cried out for riddance from a Sin Mortal Life, as the only present redress, in hope Christ our Life, would yet have Victory over that in us, which has been such a bar to all our Fruitions and Enjoyments with God. But while I was in these complaints, this Word came, saying: Those who find themselves grieved and molested by a Terrestrial Life, as made unwillingly subject hereunto, shall not be chargeable with any of those evil consequences, that the Corporeal State has produced. But if they still resist, and give no countenance to anything which springs from that Root, then in time your Spirits, through contact with the Divine Body, shall out-wear all of the corruptible property, and so be altogether found in the free powerful Nature of Jesus, for Victory and Dominion over all of this Evil World.

**February 16, 1678**  
**The Three Unclean Creatures:**  
**A Dream**

[3F 5:5] §.I saw in the Night-Vision a deep Hole in the Earth, as I was walking with a Friend in an open place, which I drew near unto, and there came out a strange kind of Creature, which I could not know what to liken it to. It had a Head like a Frog with Wings and a long Tail, and it did fly past me to the Person that was with me. But it was driven back, and it went into its Hole that seemed to be bottomless. Then came out another kind, like to a Cockatrice, at which I was put into some disturbance, and withdrew from the place to my Friend, and it followed a little way, but was driven back with a strong Gale to its own place. Then did rise out another creeping Creature, that was Speckled, and with its Mouth open, from which went forth a Dark Smoke. These Three Sorts were all obvious to my sight. And there was this advice given me, saying: Watch these into their Den, as they do return, and then by Faith, and earnest Prayer bind them down. For they have been in confederacy, to take away the Life of the Lord's own Turtle Mourning-Mate, that has been in Tribulation. It was also Counsell'd me, that we now take care to stand upon our Guard, in the Life of the pure Spirit, and in the fortitude and strength of Faith, and then we should be able to bind down all of this kind.

**February 17, 1678**  
**The Interpretation of the Dream**

[3F 5:6] §.This Morning as I was considering of the former strange Creatures rising out of the Pit, which in the Magia was shown me, and hereby was further given me to know: That these were most Pernicious Spirits, raised up by some awakening Calls, from ireful revengeful Spirits, whether in Flesh or out, that might make appeals to Divine Justice, all which are ready to kill, and destroy, to bind and afflict. But the Lord this day has shown me, that He sent His Angels to stop all these in their way; so as they could have no Power to touch the Life, which they did combine against. And it was said to me: The last Beast that came with an open Mouth with a Dark Fume was in particular in great

envy and rage, against the Life-Ministration opened in me, and would endeavor to cast forth his Dark Venom, to cloud the Glory of it, and does hereunto daily watch. Upon which I was cautioned by the Spirit, that we were evermore to keep within the Circle-Light, where the Oil of the Unction will be still dropping, against which no Poison of this kind shall be hurtful.

[3F 5:7] Then also this Word of direction was given for my Friend: That the Love that has restrained these Powers of Darkness, though through a Veil of blackness and temptation, yet the sense of the Bridegroom's Espousal Love might evermore have a mighty force and constraint, to live up to every dedicated vow. For they now stand recorded in God's Roll, and it will be our joy to perform them, so that the Great Apollyon may have no power to circumvent, or by any instrument come into our Inward Tent: Where let us take all advice and counsel only with the Spirit; then we shall foresee all of Evil.

### **February 18, 1678** **An Appointed Time for Everything**

[3F 5:8] §.As soon as I awaked, or rather was awakened by this Word, which thus spake: *There is a set time and season for everything, therefore watch to it, and observe whenever the Hovering Dove flutters his Wing, so as you may hear the Sound thereof: then be in Deep Stillness, and stir not up the least Essence that belongs to Sensibility. Then you may know what is working within the Globe of the unknown World.* This following Scripture hereupon was brought, alluding to, *Mat. 17:27* Therefore as the Fish that came up with the piece of Silver in his Mouth, so dive into the deep of the Still Ocean, without which you will not find the Precious Jewel. For you must sink down as one lost in this Sea of all rich Treasury for a time, but when the Prize is taken, then come into Manifestation, and swim upon the broad Waters, with the pure Gospel-Testimony to give forth out of your Mouths, as a Sealing and *Feeling* Ministry. These are the great things that are to be looked after, in derision to all this Worldly honor and false deceivable dignities, whereof all will be ashamed in the rising day of this Glory.

### **February 19, 1678** **Remove Evil Counselors**

[3F 5:9] §.This Word much followed me, as I was considering the matter of thoughts, that saying in the *Proverbs: Remove Evil Counsellors, and the Throne of the King will be established.* I much marveled what the Spirit meant by following me with this Word, the Scope of it tending to an exterior Monarchy. But the Holy One did take it up, and apply it very fitly to those Multiplicity of Thoughts, which I was in myself passing Judgment upon, being made to discern from the Light of Wisdom, that by Counsel of Thoughts, the government of the Inward Kingdom of the Mind was swayed. For it was opened unto me, that according to the Nature of them, whether Spiritual and Weighty, or Earthly, Drossy, and Light, so accordingly Ideas were opened in the understanding, and the Will framed to a consent thereunto, whether evil or good.

[3F 5:10] Now the King, who was said to Figure out the Superior Spirit of the Mind, acts altogether as His Counsel is. Every thought presents a Person, and they are Magical Essences, Subtle Spirits. Few have understood the Mystery of Imaginations, in suffering and giving way for them in their Mixed Property, to be continually at the King's Counsel-Table making Laws, and determining matters concerning the Kingdom within. Now I was called to examine and try every Spirit of this kind, before they were admitted, for the carrying on of so great a Government in the Will and Mind. For whatever is resolved upon interiorly is executed accordingly, as opportunity presents. Therefore herein lies the most weighty matter, beyond all that happily has been considered of.

### From Where Thoughts Proceed

[3F 5:11] Now for further understanding herein, we are to observe from where thoughts proceed, and the matter which produces them. First of the Nature and kind of them: as sinful and vain; Then again as they are pure, spiritual, and good. Then there is another sort of imagination which springs from the Spirit of this World, which may be permitted as relating absolutely to what is temporary, for the feeding and supplying the Outward Body. Some thoughts may be allowed for this with caution and restriction, during the present requiring of a Mortal Form. And yet the Inward Mind kept undefiled, though permitted to contrive for the outward preservation.

### Hellish Cogitations

[3F 5:12] But now let us first consider of those thoughts which are evil, and only evil continually; that proceed from the Dark World, and from the Nature of the Dragon, which made God repent Him, that ever He had made Man to be on the Earth. And these are Fierce, Fiery, Bitter, Wrathful, Malicious, Envious, Killing, and Murderous thoughts and imaginations. Thus the very Original Spring of Man's Heart was corrupted, from where issued forth such Dark and Hellish cogitations from the Nature of the Dragon. So that God's Spirit was even weary with striving against such a continual Stream of Evil. Upon which account the Years of Man's Life was shortened, because no improvement was made, of so many Hundred Years, which were lived before the Flood.

[3F 5:13] The Most Holy One has regard to what are the purposes and intents of the Heart: If they be corrupted, God takes no pleasure in any appearance of good, that any do act. Therefore, our Lord Jesus did love to convince the Righteous Scribes and Pharisees hereof: Who did see and well know the thoughts of their Hearts, what they were to God-ward, however Holy and Zealous they seemed for to be. Therefore He plainly deals with them, that no outward covert of seeming Holiness would avail, while the Heart was sending forth that which was bitter, envious, and wrathful, and hellish, which proceeds from the Evil Imaginations, flowing from the Dragon's Nature. These were those Evil Imaginations that would Kill and Murder the Heir of Life inwardly in themselves, as they did Kill outwardly the Heir of Life in Flesh. Such thoughts as these may be said in some kind to be Soul-Murderers: These all are of that sort which are to be exiled from the Throne-Will, in which the Spirit of the Lamb is to live.

### Earthly Thoughts

[3F 5:14] §. Now in the second place, Let us consider those Evil Thoughts, that are temporary and sensual, not having the Spirit of Holiness in them, all which Earthly Thoughts proceeds from the Earthly Spirit of this World, and from this Earthly Constellations awakening them. As the former Evil Thoughts proceed from the Nature of the Dragon, so do these from the Nature of the Beast, and therefore are carnal, sensual, fleshly, and evil in their degree, and do kill, murder, and stifle the Life of God in themselves, as the former, and therefore they are to be banished from the interior Throne Will, in which the Spirit of Christ is to live.

[3F 5:15] But it may be objected against the Generation of both these Evil Thoughts, that though we may restrain the effects of Sinful and Fleshly cogitations, through the Spirit, yet it seems impossible to stop the inundation of them, they are so swift, and can come in upon us as every sense stands open to what is of this Earthly State, that lies wholly in evil, which is the Subject they do work upon, and from which they are awakened. It is undeniable, that we are liable to this danger from *Adam's*

Root in ourselves, from which all bitter, envious, and wrathful cogitations, together with all earthly, carnal, and sensual Cogitations do spring. But yet we are not left without a cure for this intrinical first cause, from where all Souls deprivation from God proceed. For this also help is provided, by renouncing, and abhorring, and stifling our own Thoughts, as they appear to be evil, trying every Spirit of this sort, by the Sapphire-Stone of Fire, that will burn up both the Hellish, and light chaffy Earthly Conceptions, that would so aptly overrun our whole Ground, that so nothing of the Good Seed might be suffered to spring.

### A Cruise of Salt

[3F 5:16] Now as we shall through conviction, from the Spirit of Love, judge down all these Evil Thoughts that spring from this bitter Source, so Power of Eternal Might will come in to our aid. As in *Elisha's* time, the Inhabitants of *Jericho* complained to him of the naughtiness of the Waters, that made Barrenness and brought Dearth, who by a Cruise of Salt healed the Waters, that so the Ground brought forth Fruit of a right kind. Truly this may be very fitly applied, to that superfluity of naughtiness in the Imaginary Minds, which thus drowned are in the corrupt Waters, that do break in, from the Earthly senses opening, and do with them bring Death and Famine.

[3F 5:17] §. Now who can redress us but the Lord our Prophet, who is nigh to hear our complaints, and to cast somewhat in, that may alter the whole property and nature of our Cogitations, as *Elisha* did the Waters. Even so such a change produced may be from that rich virtual Cruise, wherefrom the True Seasoning of the Pure Deity is dropped in, which verily only can Heal all our Springs, and make them rise high and clear, without the Earthly Mud of Sin.

### The Threefold Generation of Cogitations

[3F 5:18] §. Now we are to consider a Threefold Generation of Cogitations, that in their course do move from their several Centers. As *first* the Evil Thoughts and Hellish Cogitations arise from the Dark World, and from the Center of Darkness, and from the Nature and Spirit of the Dragon in us.

[3F 5:19] §. *Secondly*, the Evil, Earthly, Fleshly, Carnal Sensual Thoughts, and Cogitations do proceed from the Center of this *Earthly* Principle, and from the Nature and Spirit of this great World in us, called the *Beast* in the *Revelations*. All these Evil, Vain, Earthly, and Impertinent Cogitations do continually arise from the Earthly degenerated Life, whereof it is said that God is altogether excluded out of such thoughts. Now from this same center proceed Conceptions, Thoughts, and Cogitations that are not so grossly sinful, as the former. For these relate to making Provision for this temporal Being, to which allowance may be given as lawful and necessary, but yet in subordination to the Rule and Law of Faith, to which they all are to be bounded, as keeping to the Outward Court of the Outward Mind, that is, to the Mind of Sense and Reason, belonging to the Outward Man, but not to trench upon the Inward Mind of the Inward Man, which is the Holy place.

[3F 5:20] §. *Thirdly*, From this Inward, still, passive, and silent Mind, belonging to the Inward Man does the Third degree of Thoughts, and Cogitations proceed, and spring from. These are all Pure, *Heavenly*, and Celestial. They are from above, from a Heavenly Center. They come all from the Divine World, from the *One Element*, and Orb of Lights all flowing from the Nature of the Spirit of Christ, moving in the silent superior Mind of the Inward Man. None of those other must thrust themselves into the Heavenly presence of the King, neither can they indeed find any way in, but are sent back again with derision and shame.



### Ministering Spirits

[3F 5:21] §.The Lord knows His own Holy and Pure Offspring, which are under Consecration, that always wait in the Temple of the silent Mind, as Ministering Spirits, to take and receive what the Wisdom and Counsel of the Holy Trinity shall give forth further. These are the worthy and safe Counsellors, that stand about the superior Spirit of the inward Will and Mind, as will establish the Kingdom of God in such a way in us, as no Satanical force shall be able to destroy. But hereby we shall come to have all pure Purposes and Decrees, pure Thoughts and Cogitations from the Holy Center of Light and Love in ourselves, flowing from the Spirit of Christ in us, moving and acting. Thus the Kingdom of Love, Joy, Peace, and Purity will be fully established in us. Oh, the Fruitful Seasons which will then be known in our climate, the Waters of Life generating such pure Thoughts, as may usher into the very Throne of God, as a guard or train of Heavenly Powers, which are admitted into the Secret Counsel of the Most Holy. The Holy Spirit needs no greater argument to provoke us by, than what here has been revealed. Therefore let us be wise and know this last Heavenly Center, from which this last degree of Heavenly Thoughts proceed, wherewith our God may ever be with us in Communion of pure and Holy Thoughts.

### February 20, 1678 The Sacred Fire: A Vision

[3F 5:22] §.Towards the Morning, being in contemplation of what the Spirit ministered unto me of Eternals, I saw as in a Circle a pure Azure Blue rise out, that turned into a White Transparent *Flame*, which by somewhat that was sprinkled upon it did mightily increase. The Vision passing away, and being prevented at that Season, of waiting for an opportunity of it, I could not know its signification.

### February 21, 1678 The Interpretation of the Vision

[3F 5:23] §.The next Morning calling it over again, and observing the way which the Spirit dictated, as the Fish into the Sea did sink to bring up the Treasury of Light and Knowledge, which was hereby found being explained unto me by an Internal Voice, which told me: That I had seen the *Gulf of Eternal Light*, from where the matter was generated. This Spirit of Power and Life, that shall enter into Nature all of God to renew evidently, where this shall have its opening, it will work consumingly, and yet therefrom shall come a Body of Increase, that shall be mighty upon the Earth. For it is the Sparkling *Fire-Seed* from the Deity, that will for itself create a meet Tabernacle for the Holy Trinity's manifestation.

### The Fire-Baptism

[3F 5:24] Then was it declared that this *Sacred Fire* had now begun its enkindling in our Earth, therefore have regard unto it, that nothing of this World quench it, but keep it pure and entire, and then the Deity will Sprinkle that with Fuel: For its great increase shall be brought forth substantially, into Working Powers, operatively to make good and fulfill all of Prophecy; which only the Sure Testimony can give, that God is again returned into Humanity, therein to fulfill the Grand Mystery of a Complete Redemption. Which can no other way be finished, but through this *Fire-Baptism*, which each one may and must feel in themselves, as a rising pleasant *Flame*, which will do no other hurt, but to consume that, which has been introduced from the Strange Spirits. Therefore let us seek and pray earnestly for this Celestial Spring to rise, to recover us into the Original Purity, to which we have lain so long as slain.

## Chapter 6

### February 22, 1678 The Unlimited Gift

[3F 6:1] §.This Word came to me from the Lord Jesus, saying, As all things of the Father, whether in the Heights above, or in the depths beneath are now mine, by virtue of My fulfilling all of His Will and Pleasure: Even so, that shall be derived to you from Me, if you shall fulfill My course, after the Law of the Spirit, and bring an Offering up of a Pure Mind, and a Surrendered Will, that your Vessels may ever be supplied with the Kingdom's-Store. Then no more room can be for Worldly Stuff: for all of this kind is chased out, that the Lord from Heaven may be All in All.

### February 23, 1678 The Dark Cloud

#### A Resolution of a Question Concerning Spiritual Desertions

[3F 6:2] §.Upon the consideration how liable we were after all the Degrees of Spiritual Manuductions we had received and passed through, yet were still subject to strange Vicissitudes, as to the Inward State of our Minds, *viz.* to all Spiritual Desertions, and to the Cloudings of our Heavens, and to the stoppings of the Life-Springs. After all which my Spirit was inquisitive, *Why highly illuminated Spirits should be thus exercised, and so hardly invaded upon, with what is so treacherous to their Life-Crown and Glory, and that after they have been exalted into the Heaven of Light, Joy, and Peace?* This resolve was given me that for some causes this was meet to be suffered.

[3F 6:3] §.*First*, To make the Spirit thus assaulted, as *Joshuah* did, to inquire and to bring all and every Tribe before the Lord Jesus, that is every secret thing that lies in the Essences of the Will, to stand to the touch of the Flaming-Bush, through which we must pass, for a thorough refining, in order to be pure *Nazarites* to live with God alone.

[3F 6:4] §.*Then* again, these over-running of our Inward Plantations by the Beast of Prey, may happen to let us know, we are not yet come up to that security, and impregnable defense, but that we may be faced and captivated with those very Enemies, that have been so often conquered by us. And all this is to make us more watchful and vigilant, and to call for all our Spiritual force and Might in God, who delights to hear and receive from us strong Cries and Supplications, who will hear us in what we fear, after we have resisted steadfast in the Faith. All which batterings and shakings shall make for the laying of a more Sure Foundation. For this Word was spoke to me expressly to this end, and upon the complaints account, saying, O you afflicted and sorrowful in Spirit. Your Barren Ground shall be sown with New Seed, that your Light may rise, and your Love increase, your Water-spouts to run free; and that your droughty Land may be refreshed, and that you may eat the Fruit thereof joyfully. Only for a while abide in purity of Heart and Mind, in all patience and long-suffering, and you shall see all this fully performed.

**February 26, 1678**  
**Interpretation of the Vision of the Winter Fruit**

[3F 6:5] §. This Morning the first springing matter that opened, was from what I had some Days ago (Feb. 14)<sup>3</sup> presented by way of Vision. Of which I had no Interpretation, till somewhat now did stir it up afresh, and called it over as a thing of consequence. The Vision was that pleasant Fruit, which I did see about an enclosed Wall, after which I so longed to taste it, because I was informed by the Keeper thereof, that it was Magical Fruit, that was always there to be found fresh, Winter and Summer both alike, and its operation would come to be of the same kind in those, who would come to eat hereof. Of this the Spirit minded me to look into, and consider, why the live Bird was brought out, and slain before my Eye, and then given into my Hand, which in a moment was turned into the very likeness of this all desirable Fruit, of which I did then eat.

**A Second Eve**

[3F 6:6] The Spirit by way of Dialogue did illustrate this Mystical Vision saying: A Second *Eve* you are, who earnestly desires to be made wise, as believing there is that excellent virtue in this never failing Fruit, which can never corrupt, and can make those that eat hereof Incorruptible. Therefore it is not such an unlawful and forbidden temptation to you, as it was to the First *Eve*, who being in an Innocent and Sinless state, and was not to go any higher, till God Himself appeared to them: but giving an Ear to a strange Voice, brought their posterity into that wretched State of Apostasy, that all need there is to find out the Fruit in which the Divine Magia Spirit is, for recovery of the Paradisical Sinless Body again.

[3F 6:7] Now ever since *Adam's* relapse, various ways and helps have been propounded for Restoration from this Evil Plunge, and it has been doing near this 6,000 years, but not finished. The World still lies in Wickedness, as it was in *Noah's* Time; though Christ, that perfect God-man, has been manifested in the Earth, yet sin still remains, and in those also, who chiefly make claim unto His Blood-Offering. Then weigh and consider that something further is yet to be done for a Blessed Overturn in this Latter Age. For all shall not still die in Sin, and pass from out of the Elementary Body into Unknown Mansions, where here the living know nothing more of them. For this Vision signifies that this Time is now passing away, and another state of things is approaching; and you are an Awakened Representative hereof, through your Spiritual piercing Eye, that has espied this choice Fruit, which your Spirit longs and presses to taste, and the operation thereof to know.

[3F 6:8] But though this Precious Fruit is obvious to a pure Spirit, yet it is kept and protected by a Flaming Cherub; and though intelligence is given, yet it cannot come to take hereof, though in never so much Vehement Hunger, for the Lost Image to be repaired hereby. The Spirit added: True that all of this kind is by free Gift: and upon such Eternal Wealth, there is a mighty strong enclosure. But know that there will be some grants of favor in particular to such, whose Spirits are often driven out from themselves, to see out a better living than they shall ever find in Nature's Terrestrial Essences. For such the Holy Watcher shall receive or take up to reveal this Palace-Wall, and to set open the Gate for holy souls, that would be in disjunction from all of Sin, and from a Vile Body; For such are appointed to be the First who shall bring down the Heavenly and Celestial transformation into this world.

---

<sup>3</sup> SDV Note: The Vision recorded on Feb. 14 states that the Interpretation was given “twelve days after,” which would be Feb. 26; a date that does not exist in the original. The Interpretation is actually found under Feb. 23. Therefore Feb. 23 was divided, and the Interpretation is now dated Feb. 26, to agree with the Feb. 14 entry.

### **The Two Birds**

[3F 6:9] Then I was further inquisitive, what the Live Birds were, that were taken out of the Branches of this Tree, and one of them given slain into my Hand, and immediately changed itself into the desirable Fruit? Then was shown me that the Human Body that was offered up for the Atoning Sacrifice for Sin, was by the Bird slain, figured out; Which hereby is changed into a more Spiritual and Powerful quality, for Spiritual Meat, to feed upon. Such as may by a pure Spirit be able to eat, may have their Gross Humanity altered into a Spiritual Body. And as we are able to partake hereof, then Corruptible Corporeity shall forever cease, answerably as it did with our Lord Jesus, and with Him incorporated to be, and from there to spring and to yield Fruit, from the Essential Power of His Life, thus given after this Mystical manner. Which none can perceive or find, but those who are instructed and guided by the Spirit.

[3F 6:10] Then inquired I further, for whom the other Slain Bird was reserved? This Answer was given: That it was allotted for them who waited with me in the same Faith for a Transformation. Now then, what estimation can we have sufficiently for such a Ministration, as may bring to this Perfection: and for this end improve our believing, as the way for attaining it. It was also the Counsel of the Spirit to be mighty in Faith, for in the Power of that Winged Spirit, we may find entrance into this enclosed Palace. And then the sight will attract this principal Gift, while we have here our daily walks in the Spirit, abstaining and keeping a holy Fast from the grosser earthly Fruits, we shall assuredly have of this all pleasant Transmuted Flesh, for our Life's food: therefore let us persevere.

### **March 1, 1678 The Flaming Tent: A Vision**

[3F 6:11] §.Gathering up my Spirit to hear what would be ministered from out of the Holy Place, this Word came saying: Blessed are those who shall wisely improve all time, for the getting into favor with God, their Creator; For now all need there will be for a sure Testimony hereof, to have it seated within them, before the *Dreadful Day* overtake them, which as a Thief in the Night will suddenly come. Therefore fly to our Watch-Tower, where the Holy One will be found nigh. Then after this, there appeared a Hand and Arm stretched out, holding an encompassing fine streaming Banner. Which at first was as a Curtain folded: then it opened and out-spread itself, as a covering Tent, it looked like the Blue Element, with streaks of Flame Colors. This I saw to great admiration: and there followed this very Cry, saying, Haste away into this your Shepherd's Tent; for it is a time, when terrible Beasts of Prey will be let out. But under this covering nothing of Fury or Destruction shall come, therefore always abide in God your Tent, and go not forth upon your peril.

### **March 2, 1678 The Blood Under the Altar**

[3F 6:12] §.My Internal Senses were still more opened and made attractive, drawing down Eternal Powers for guardian Might and Defense, against the Brier-twisting Nature of Sin; Which we have been warned of so often by the Spirit of Wisdom, because the Spirit of our Lord knows, we cannot make our way to the Throne Presence, till we may be presented without any Leprous-Spot. For the confirmation of this, I did hear this Cry, saying, Endless will be the stirring motion of Sin, without a greater and more mighty force of the Lamb's Life-Blood, spring from under the Altar. To which end Pray, and be earnest, that now it may flow, as a Fountain free: For if at any time it should stop, great Strife and Soul-bitterness would be felt: Because the Serpent, with this World, stirs their dregs, and still cast in. It is the washing-Blood only that must yet spring higher, to take away and expire the Sin, by the Blood-Offering.

**March 5, 1678**  
**The Altar of the Third Degree**

[3F 6:13] §. This Word spake in me, Erect a pure *Altar* of the *Third Degree* unto your God, that therefrom your Oblations may be of force, which has been too weak. Then immediately the Figure of an Altar was before my inward Eye built up, of Stones like Diamonds of Square, Cut, in which you might as in a Glass see your own Face. It had four Cups in each corner, of Gold colors. This Word followed the foregoing Idea, saying: The ascending Altar shall move the Eternal Mystery, for the Renovation of that Life, which has lain as slain under the Altar. Therefore let all your mighty Cries go forth; till you mingle your Sacrifices with the touch-Fire of the Holy Ghost.

**Cessation of the Trespass Offering**

[3F 6:14] Then was it put to me to consider, what kind of Altar hereby was to be understood? And for what use set apart. For we may take notice, that in those Ages before Christ's Appearing, no Worship of Altar-Ministration was to be regarded, as is numerously recorded; from which, Figurative, visible Altars were upon all occasions erected, by which the Holy One might receive from His Creatures Oblations, and sweet smelling Sacrifices. And they had no other way to hear from God their Creator, from out of whose sight they were now expelled, but by the descent upon the Altar, with Seraphic Fire, as a Testimony of acceptance, which was often given in that Time. If so, what may be now expected from such an Altar as is the true, and real, Spiritual substance of all, Christ the Lord, who according to the express Pattern in the Heavens, is come to frame and fashion in us His own perfect Figure, and to dedicate it only to one use: Which may consist in a perpetual Commemoration of the Blood, that atones and takes away the Sin. That so the Trespass-Offering may have its Cessation, through the Blood-Sprinkling of the Deity, which as the Seed of a Sinless Life, will spring through Nature, by which we shall become Perfect Consecrated Altars to God, and shall be primarily only for His use.

**Altars of Earth, Brass, and Gold**

[3F 6:15] Now it was given me to understand, that before there can be attainment to this high sacred Altar-Degree, where no more of a Sin-Offering is required, I received this instruction from the Spirit, according to the Vision Cry. That there are Altars of a Threefold consideration, which the Holy Scriptures verify. As first, Altars of Earth, then of Brass, and then of Gold; which had upon it only the distinguishing Crown. The pure Incense, Night and Day, did burn upon this Altar: Which signified only Victory and Praise. But now Two Ministrations there be, before this can be reached to. Therefore we must look into ourselves, and examine ourselves, that so we may know to what Altar Degree we are come. For each one is called forth to be a Consecrated Altar, that so all the Figures may be fulfilled in Life, Power, Substantiality, answerable to that Great and High Altar, that is entered into the Holy Place in the Heavens, henceforth expecting our Ascending after Him.

[3F 6:16] Now we are to consider of the First Altar, which is in the form of an Earthly Figure, which stands without the Court, upon which the Sacrifices of Contrition are offered daily in the sense and sorrow of Sin, making confession thereof, encompassing the Altar with Fears, as a preparing Oblation, for what is to follow. For here we are not to stick, but further to proceed from the weak Earthly Image to the Heavenly, wherein is strength and might: Which the second degree signifies by the Altar of Brass, which must be changed into Gold. Therefore of this kind of Mettle our Altar-Body must be constituted. For to render them more refined out of the earthly Sensuality, and brought into Spirituality, so that gross Nature shifts itself into a more transparency, through the foregoing Com-punctions, and Soul-Agonyes, which is the first work that the Spirit puts some Saints upon: which

being gone through, then one degree of Translation is hereby attained unto, that is into more Light, Joy, and Liberty. And hereby capable of another kind of Ministration, in offering up the Sins of the Flesh, through the Eternal Spirit, that from this may follow or flow the Atoning Blood.

### **The True Altar-Sacrifice**

[3F 6:17] And how is this to be considered? Verily not as it has been generally understood, the Holy Spirit has fathomed this Secret, and brought it thus unto me, by way of similitude. The Priest with his own Hands, was to slay the Heifer or Ram, and to sprinkle the Blood thereof upon the Altar, and then upon the Altar of Brass, to burn the Flesh as a whole Burnt-Offering. From this, much was revealed to me, as showing and opening the depth of this Mystery. Now whereas these Types have been only applicable to Christ's Suffering, and His Body-Offering as a Representative for all, and so no further need of any following atoning Sacrifice, but to expect Redemption from that only, as exhibited in the Flesh. This is to be owned and allowed, as our true Altar-Sacrifice. But withal know that Christ expects from His Saints, that answerably to His own example, we should fulfil the Type with Him, which is: that we His Saints should also offer up our Bodies as our reasonable Sacrifice.

[3F 6:18] And how must this be, and by what Hand? First the Life of the Beast must go for it, the very Life-Blood let out by the Priest, which presents the Spirit of Christ Jesus in His Saints, as distinct and separated for that end, to put to Death what would live after the Flesh, which thoroughly expiates the Sin, when the Blood-Life thereof runs down. This is a true Atoning Offering, which will bring down Fire-Celestial upon the Altar, as a Testimony that Christ in Spirit has slain in us the Earthly-Life afresh, that so hereby our Debt-Offering may be fully paid. No other way there is to make us clear and guiltless, but first to shed forth the Blood-Life of this Sin-offering. Then after that, a Blood of High and Immaculate kind will spring through all Nature's Properties, to change the Altar yet once again; For hereby the Holy Place in the Mind, Will, and Senses will be prepared, and they will be purified with Fire and Blood. Then shall you see, what will be the Third Degree.

### **The Crown of Perfumed Oil**

[3F 6:19] Now after our own Life has been sown in Death, to be raised up again into a Figure all of weighty transparent Gold, where all polluted Offerings must forever cease: no more Sins of the Flesh or Beast must be confessed hereupon. For the New Covenant Inscription is upon this Golden Altar to be read, as it was in Words given to me, so hereof I shall declare, the Motto was this: *To the known God, whom we no more ignorantly Worship.* For in the Altar-Light, we do see His Face, the Blood-Life has removed away all enmity, and iniquity is no more to be found. The Crown of Perfumed Oil belongs to this Altar, and the Incense that is like Flaming Pillars of smoke, Scented with Powders all Celestial from the Eternal World. This is the definition of God the Lamb, as He comes to be our Highest degree of Altar-Perfection in us. Then will go forth the inspiring Powers that will redress our defects. Till this shall be accomplished, we must proceed on in our Priestly Course, in our Daily Offering for the expiation of Sin. Living and staying ourselves upon the Meat and Drink Offering, which in this present Ministration will be sent down from our great High Priest, from the most Inward Tabernacle in the Heavens, till we shall be assuredly Crowned with this Altar-Figure, and therein be found True Worshipers in Altar-Flames

[3F 6:20] *[This was continued, and a further Revelation hereof given, upon the Seventh Day: as it hereafter follows, March 12. In the interim, many Spiritual assaults were made, in order to withdraw the Temple-Waiters from such a close attendance on this Most Holy Altar, as was required. From which it was needful to give down this Advertisement and Caution the very next Day, being the 6th of March.]*

**March 6, 1678**  
**A Word of Caution**

[3F 6:21] §.As I awaked in the Morning, it was said: Haste, and prevent all of an evil purpose that is against the Head-Life. Which by and through putting on the Garment of the Spirit close about you, will be both a Fence and Ornament, against all of Sin-contrivance that would bereave you of the Kingdom of Joy, Peace, and Purity.

[3F 6:11] §.Upon the 8th and 9th of this present Month, there were two Considerable and Prophetical Dreams, sent from a Superior Sphere, to give a seasonable Premonition against imminent Perils, Private and Public. The one did relate to the Cunning Treachery of some Spirits of Prey, in whom the Nature of the Serpent concealed, should come to be manifested, and a Victory obtained by the Watchful Spirit: Which accordingly was verified. The other to the Outward State of the Kingdom, and the general consternation of the same, through the public ownment of the Papal Authority, then about eleven or twelve years before this came to pass. Both these are thought fit here to be omitted: but may elsewhere possibly be inserted. That which follows is from a deeper Center.

## Chapter 7

### March 12, 1678 The Mystery of the Altar Further Explained

[3F 7:1] §.This Word was further in special given to me, saying, the Altar-Inscription is not in vain unfolded. For hereby you are to find out, where lay the rich Inheritance of the Waiters thereupon, for a separated Portion to live in, which to none else appertains. Therefore consider your High-Calling as a Gift and Office from the Lord, by which you are taken from among others, upon the Altar-Income to be satisfied. This only is required for the present time, let the Altar be cleaned all through, till the Seventh Day is expired, that so your *Messiah* Prince may appear to you in Another Altar-Frame, and to put an end to such Altars, upon which Trespass-Offerings, according to the course, has been offered again and again, because no Perfection could be attained.

[3F 7:2] For thus the Vision of the Holy One did explain itself: That as the Lord Christ's coming to offer up Himself, did Abolish all other Sacrifices, which were ordained by the First Covenant, and caused to cease, as it is written, *Sacrifice and Offering thou wouldst not, but a Body thou hast prepared*. So likewise, He is yet to come once again, to put an end to what Offerings has been ever since, in a more refined way of Spirituality, yet being weak and imperfect, not answering that high end of a complete Redemption. There is therefore a necessity for Him to appear in Another Kind of Figure, Transparent and all Powerful in a Selected Priesthood, and to rear up the Everlasting Tabernacle: Which the Spirit has much yet to show and open, but hard to be comprehended and uttered, because of the Medium, through which it must pass for knowledge and discovery.

#### Christ: A Figurative Sacrifice

[3F 7:3] But thus much is fathomed and brought up by that Spirit, who has entered into the Mystery, who has verified that Christ in the form of Flesh, was also a Figurative Sacrifice offered, which was expedient for the transgressions under the First Covenant, that they should be atoned and purified by this Immaculate Lamb, but His must rise to a further degree. For this Heavenly Type is yet to have its fulfilling by bringing down the Holy Place and Heavenly Sanctuary with all its Celestial Ornaments, and Powers, and Substantialities, that belong to the Everlasting Priesthood. For all of this Temple Glory is yet reserved to be revealed in its time, and for it Anointed Holy Priests shall be constituted, who yet are but in the process of the Seven Day's clarifying their Figurative Altars in themselves, and are preparing for it, by taking a Higher Order, when the Heavens shall rend, and all of the real Original Tabernacle shall come down, which has there been shut up.

#### A Foregoing Sign

[3F 7:4] But it may be inquired: *What foregoing Sign there will be before the descending of this Priestly-Kingdom, so that we may know it is here?* No greater Sign for this shall be given than the Travailing Birth, which is impregnated with the Holy Ghost. Which fulfilling Type will be in the Spirit of an Altar-Flame that shall go forth to fetch and draw down the Holy Camp, in which God will dwell and unite, as with His Spouse and Bride in His New *Jerusalem*-State. Now the Blessed-



ness will be to them, who shall be first favored with this Sign of this Mighty Birth, and then it brings to the Golden Altar, as the Firstborn of a Virgin-Womb: then all the Powers in Heaven will open. This is the Gift that of all acceptance will be for to Burn incense, and to scatter Perfumed Coals, that whenever they fall, all touched herewith shall be, and become Spirits in Heavenly forms, meet for high Conjunction with the Holy Trinity. Oh this is that, which the inspiring Spirit drives hard for, to put some one, or other into a Spiritual Posture to enjoy them, and therefore have presented, as in a Glass of Righteousness, and Sanctuary purity, these great things, to prove whether we will be earnest for them, and acquit, and go out from the Worldly Sanctuary, and forsake the Land of our polluted Nativity, wherein is great darkness, distance, and ignorance of all these Super eminent Joys and Fruitions which are shut up from us. Which entered upon might be most clearly enjoyed, if we could shake off the Cloudy Black Body; from which the Root of Sin does spring.

**March 13, 1678**  
**A Continuance on the**  
**Altar's Discourse**

[3F 7:5] §. What more can be done, but to offer up the Beast, till it be consumed to Ashes, that here out may spring a Body all pure, in which can be found no more the relics of Sin. This will be the Fruit of all Sacrifices and Offerings, which now in the Second Degree, is our work to be Ministering, in order to Christ our great High-Priest's appearing to us. According as it is written: To them that look for Him, He will be manifest to them. And who are those that can with confidence expect His Appearance, but them who are purified from Evil Consciences, being found all in an entire Spirituality.

[3F 7:6] But then it may be objected: *If any one shall hereunto attain, to be so clear and Spotless in a Nature Immaculate, what more can be added by the Lord's coming Personally?* As to this, very much may be expected, for those who are first prepared to such a degree, and have striven hard before others to obtain it. Therefore it is given us to know, there is more full reward, or else there would not be that encouragement to such, who are made willing, so to deny, forsake and hate all of this Body of Sin, as freely to give up it in Sacrifices: as hoping that out of the Ashes hereof will rise such a Seed-Life, as will be Mighty in our Heavens and Earth, and will be as a King and Priest in great Power and Glory for us, whether in the Body Corporeal, or out: which shall be determined when come to such a Perfect Stature, as the good Spirit in us is driving hard to.

**Faith's Conquering Crown**

[3F 7:7] For this particular Word of Promise sounded in my Ear, agreeable to what is sounded in general: The Lord your God is not unrighteous to forget your Soul-Travails, and Labor of Love, Patience in Tribulations, and Altar-Offerings for the expiation of Sin: Which certainly will bring in a Talent of Great Increase, when the Lord shall descend in Altar-Flames into your Heavens, to bring down Faith's Conquering Crown. This fresh Rose-Promise being blown in the Espousal Garden, how Odoriferous is the smell to the Soul that is ever listening to hear new Confirmations for her Bridegroom's return, while it abides without the New *Jerusalem*-Camp. Upon which we do great satisfaction experiment, while moving upon our Pilgrim-State, though passing through a Land, where are Giants, strong in the *Apollyon*-might, and at every step Scorpions are ready to Sting. So perilous is the way which we must pass through, before we can set foot upon the Sea of Glass. That verily we have all need not only to have the Ministration of Angels, but the Lord and Prince of Angels Himself to meet us in our journeying. That so we may be delivered from the fear of the pursuing *Esau*, who so eagerly hunts for his Prey. But oh, how soon may he be checked, when he sees who it is, that is in our Company for a Guard.

### Abraham's Blessings

[3F 7:8] It was also reminded in me, the Truth and Faithfulness of God still manifested and maintained to *Abraham*, after he had made the grand Promise of Blessing him with *Isaac*; which was some considerable time, before the accomplishment came. But this observation is to be made, that though the time seemed to be long, yet *Abraham* was not left without frequent Visitations and Communications from God, to stay him up withal. And such was *Abraham's* watchful, obedient Carriage, that he took no less care to maintain and keep up acquaintance with so great and potent a Friend, as God Almighty: Who made all Blessings, wherever he went, still to come plentifully into *Abraham*. This the Spirit would that we should take notice of, as relating to the Mighty *Messiah*-Birth, which is to be Born Again in Another Form, for a Blessing to the Earth.

[3F 7:9] And while in *Abraham's* Spirit of Faith, we are waiting here for it, and looking out, and yet prolonged, what shall or can support us, while the Kingly-Birth from us does stay, but such like frequent appearances of God; whereby His Word of Promise may still be established, as a means to keep off all staggering, while the thing may be prolonged: For should we still hear nothing anew from our *Alpha* and *Omega*, we should sink into doubt and fear. Therefore we may hear His Voice through the Golden Vial of the Spirit, if thereto we can lend a single Ear, to hear what is considered from the Counsel of the Holy Trinity, for us further to do in our process. This indeed will make out great Friendship unto us, while we must pass through an Enemies' borders, for the countenance of, God will cause great awe, as we did see in *Abraham's* Case. These advantages are not all, but only somewhat to sweeten our way. We are to look after a more rich Prize than all this, as the full income and reward, after we have gone through all our Spiritual Course. Which are the high Qualifications, and Spouses Dresses with Ornaments, which all do excel, in them who are found in the God-like fashion.

### He Shall Appear the Second Time

[3F 7:10] Who but these can look with any Confidence for Christ the Lord to appear? Who shall be able to see Him as He is, until all purified by Altar-Fire? For that Scripture in the *Hebrews* was in the Spirit's own sense thus opened unto me, which I shall not omit to write after the copy given. The Words are thus expressed: *To them that look for him, He shall appear the Second Time, without Sin, unto Salvation.* It was opened, that it is not a bare expectation that will bring the Lord down to any who are found in the Body of Sin. To such no Crown of Salvation will be fixed upon, as the Diadem of a full reward; which is assigned and appropriated only for the Virgin-Spirit, that is clothed upon in the clear and White Robe, as looking out with Doves Eye, full of pure Innocence, that cannot be dazzled at an open face of Glory, when she shall Him see for the Consummation of all that rich Dowry, which has been shut up in the bud of a Promise. For the Inheritance will be given out to such who are actually come to the Unity of Faith's purifying dress, to be all Spiritual.

### Special Immunities

[3F 7:11] But here it may be Queried, What are the special Immunities that belong to the Lamb's Spouse? Why sure they are both great and innumerable, as has been revealed, well answering and requiting all Sufferings, and Dyings, which the Soul can possibly go through in this tempting afflicting region, they are no way equivalent, to what glory shall be revealed. Therefore that we might all be strong to hold out, and by no evil occurrence happening be at all terrified, let us further inquire hereinto in the Spirit what will come in, at our Lord's Second Appearance unto us?

[3F 7:12] His first Appearance we have already known in that Spirit, which is now making of us all ready through the Baptisms of Life, purifying Water, Blood and Altar-Fire, by all which, we may be prepared in a good degree in some suitableness, that so as a Sun, the Bridegroom may run His Race toward us, and the *Jerusalem's* Glory may first open upon us in Vision, thereby assuring us of Fruition. The *Elijah* is now upon the restoring work, and upon any one's Person, in whom it shall be first finished, the Salvation of the All-Hail, and Highly favored in the Lord, will be heard sounded again in the Earth, because the Mighty God and Savior is revealed, to change from out of the weak state, though in pure refined Corporeity, and Spirituality of Mind. This is but the First Degree. But when He appears, we shall be like Him, Glory for Glory in Personality.

[3F 7:13] And verily no less will be attributed unto the Dead and Risen with Him, but what the Lord has declared: That the Keys of the Kingdom of Heaven, shall be freely given, to open the Gates, and to enter into *Mount-Sion's* Glory; and henceforth and forever to take Power, Wisdom, and Strength, Honor, Rule and Government. For the Lamb is come to give right over the Earth to Reign, to them, who under and upon the Altar have given the Beast to be slain thereupon; And greater and more highly advancing dignities than what yet is understood and comprehended. But this may be sufficient to edge and to put us into an Holy fixed Emulation, to proceed on in our Altar-Sacrifices, so we may be found in the Lord's Number-Roll, as the First Wise Virgins, that may go to meet Him, and with Him to Celebrate the Tabernacle-Feast, in Unspeakable Joy. Where nothing of the Sour Leaven is to be mixed anymore, or our Passover eaten with Bitter Herbs. But the Oil of Joy, with the Body Celestial, and the Spirit-Wine of Strength, and the Jubilee-Harvest of Praise, none of these shall fail us, if we can bear up Faith's Sail, against the World's flowing Stream, that beats so hard upon us.

### March 15, 1678 The Ransom Out of the Sanctuary

[3F 7:14] §.Being this Morning cast into a deep Consideration upon the Account of a Holy separated walking with God, having had such drivings hereunto by the Spirit. It was the matter of my Objection, why this way was so interrupted, by some one thing or other, still interfering from the Corporeal Needs, hereinto Plunging, much contrary to the Soul's Supernatural Genius, which would be still employed in the Altar-Service, and not in Servitude to Tables, for a mortal Morsel-sake. This was much upon my Heart to present to the Lord in complaint that thus it should hang as a matter of Necessity upon such, who would be free *Nazarites*. Upon this it was given me, by way of advice, from the spring of Wisdom: That there would be no such way to be Redeemed out from all of these Thralls, as to spread the Hands of Faith, thereby to reach to that propriety, which is provided in the Sanctuary-Treasury, as the *Ransom* from all the Servitude, from which the Waiters upon the Holy things are brought out, to live upon God's Table; where we shall have all free sufficiency, and be no more subjected to the will of Creatures.

### The Multiplying Stone

[3F 7:15] O, this is that Rich Income, that we are now called upon to search out, as what belongs to us of Eternal right, There is a Multiplying-Stone, that is burning in the Altar-Furnace, that will bless us in the Heights above, and Depths beneath, whereby we may be delivered from Cares and Necessities, which are incident to the World's commoners, from which the Spirit would divide our Portion, and have us only abide in *Jacob's* goodly Tents, where nothing of scarcity shall us perplex in the Worldly Spirit; Which as an Army often breaks in, to scatter us from our Altar-Hold. But what better Weapon can we have, than the Flaming Ax of the Spirit, which is always ready in the Sanctuary for

our aid, to Slay and Cut off, what shall adventure here to invade. Therefore it is good for us to Tabernacle here with God's Battle-Ax forever, saith Wisdom our dear Mother.

**March 16, 1678**  
**The Man of the Earth**

[3F 7:16] §.This Morning I had several Advertisements from the Holy Watcher over me. As first this: Be all intent upon your Heavenly Vocation. Give to God what increase comes of His own State-Life entrusted with you. As this World appropriates to itself vain Perishing and Evil things, so know that God expects your improvement; and the return of His Principal again. Then great Caution I further had, to keep all Rule and Authority over that invisible World within. For it was given me to know, that there was a Head-Power great and mighty in the Soul-Region, to repel and keep down, what the Dragon and Beast would do to make Mutiny and Riot, according to the unregenerated State. And therefore we are to employ our Power, which we have from the Superior Light (which sees all of Sin-defect) to suppress and root out: that only God's Peace may be left for a Garrison, to keep all Treachery of Spirits out.

[3F 7:17] §.Then after this, I had a Representation of a Man, that came very near me, in a plain Husband's Garb, and looked very earnestly on me, and Bowed several times to me, but spake no Word. After which disappearing, I inquired into it, and it was spoken unto me in a Powerful Voice: Thus shall the Man of the Earth bow unto you, as you do keep him under. More of which shall be opened, as your inward Spirit shall dive, where the Treasures have lain in Hidden Darkness.

## Chapter 8

### March 18, 1678 Interpretation of the Former Vision

[3F 8:1] §.Some days after the appearing of the former Vision, I had this reviving of it again in these Words: Who is a Ruler over Nations for to subdue them, but such as are of a just and perfect Spirit, that have hung upon the Cross of Humiliation and Patience, till the Conquering Star is risen for full Salvation. These Words were as a Precious distilling Doctrine, the Holy Spirit spake them, and the same does open and apply them. As first the plain Husbandman, which I did see in the Vision Bow, it was shown, and expressly given me to know, it signified the First *Adam*, that now is in a Tilling Garb, which now indeed becomes the Man of the Earth, whose Image each one does bear; and it is appropriated unto us, as Internal and External.

#### Banishment from Paradise

[3F 8:2] The first hereof to be considered, is the Bestly Corporeal Figure, that we do bear from *Adam*, which has degraded us, because Sin entering in, turned us into this Evil Corruptible shape, but that is not all the hurt, and dishonor, it has done us. But the deformity is more inward upon the Face and Image of the Mind, there lies the greatest disguise, that caused the Banishment out of *Paradise* into this wild and rude Earth. Where he as a Lord in his degenerated State rules in the Might and Strong Reason, and is Potent in a Principle, that does lie under the Curse, and bereaved of the Blessing of Immortality; where no Death should ever have been known, but the springing Source of Life from God, the infinite Goodness; where neither Toil, Sorrow, nor Pain could have intervened, had he but stood in his First Station. But we may now cry Woe and Alas for the Earthly Man, whom the Holy and Just One has so far removed out of His sight, into a Place suited to his gross Mortal Spirit and Figure, there to generate and multiply according to his own kind, and so the Earth is over-spread with a Corrupted Seed; as we do see this Day, all filled with Creatures of Oppression and Violence, exacters in unrighteousness.

[3F 8:3] Oh deplorable World, who consists of these kind of Inhabitants, and yet does not so deeply take in the sense of the Apostatizing, as it for to lament, and for to be all uneasy, while tossed to and fro in the Sweat of your Brow, as a Fugitive and Vagabond: and yet you scarce consider, and know. For the very best Estate, that yet has been arrived to by any, who abide in an untransfigured Life, is much short and wide of the Angelical degree, and God-life Perfection. To which, if we do not return again, all that we have labored for will be in vain, as to matter of Renovation, and Mortification, in reference to the immediate sight and fruition of the Princely-Majesty. Who will receive none into His settled Place of Glory, but such who are come unto the Body of Glory in the Beauty of Holiness.

[3F 8:4] §.But the great Query now is: *How this Earthly Man, that is gone into such Power and Lordship in his own Principle, shall be made to bow to that which is of a Superior Birth and Nature? Who is come to know its Original dignity, but is over-charged and set upon by the Great Leviathan. Who has made all very strong in this Terrestrial World on his side, to Imprison, Bind, and keep down, and afflict by a Thousand ways that do belong to his Territories, the poor Innocent Seed that is*

*come into Corporeal Nature? For this end, to work out its freedom from all those violent Impositions, which the Sin and Curse has brought in, and has all surrounded this Heavenly-Plant, and as a Briery-Wood twists about to suppress its growing up to a Stature of Strength. These are the great disadvantages that the Heaven-born Spirit meets with, so soon as it begins to know itself.*

[3F 8:5] The question is now put to the Gracious, Wise, Compassionate Father of this Spiritual-Birth, to know whether we may not come to Reign over all, that the Evil One has introduced into the Mind and Will of a Corporeal Animal, as so as to put down all the Rule and Authority of Sin, joined with the Servitude to the Worldly Rudiments, wherein all Bondage and Misery consists. And thus things have stood ever since *Adam's* going out of *Paradise*, very few having reached to the Crown-Dominion. Some instances we have: As first in Him, who is the Firstborn from the Dead, and others, who were followers of Him in Suffering and Dying, are entered into the Mystery of Glory through Conquest. Though indeed their visible Reign on this Earth over evil Men was not so apparent in that Age, for they were not totally in Subjection under them: But reserved for the Last Days, of which I shall unfold, as the Spirit has it shown. But first we are to give you the Lord's Mind, as to the Query, which without all contradiction according to the Vision seen: The Earthly-Man, by an irrevocable Law and Decree, is to yield up all that he has gotten by his rational Subtlety, to the High-Born Spirit.

[3F 8:6] §.Objection, *But how is this to be done? He will never give up voluntarily, nay, though contended, and though we have constant War against him, yet he holds us out of our Paradisical-Dominion. Therefore what shall more be done, that we may come to our Princely Kingdom?*

[3F 8:7] Well, this is granted, that Usurper will not willingly yield. He knows he is upon great advantages against the Superior Life; that being to act in and through a Corporeal Form, which has Maladies and Sickesses that are incident from Gross, Fleshly, and Sinful Bodies; But that is not the least to stop the Divine actuation of Life, though sometimes we find it heavy enough. But *secondly*: The numerous Provocations that arise from the Inhabitants, fixed in the Law of Reason, all promoting and strengthening the same within us, as Good, Lawful, and orderly to be obeyed. Then these are backed with Throne-Powers and Principalities, that have such Authority in this Region, that without subscribing to them, though working in *all their deceivableness of lying Wonders*; Yet there is no living in this Necessitous Body, without Conforming and Paying Homage to the Beast, who bears all Pomp, having now *Headed himself* with the Dragons' Power and Might, according as it is said, *Who is able to make War against his Seat and Throne?*

[3F 8:8] Thus we see how hard the Spiritual-Seed is beset, all which considered might make one doubtful, that these should ever be brought under, and made to bow. But I shall rehearse the Word, which Sounded in me, saying: At all this be not terrified, for these are those Kings and Nobles, that shall be bound in Fetters of Iron, by my Star and Scepter rising, that will be given to them who hold out against *Gog* and *Magog*, who are to be continually fought against; for it is the Habitation of all Violence and Oppression, maintained by the Serpently-Seed in Bodily forms. Now what remains for us, but to abide evermore in a posture of War. We have no other way to regain the Lost Kingdom, but by the Flaming-Sword of the Spirit, which will be able to *deal with Legions of Infernal Spirits*; for of *this more Secret and Pernicious kind, we have to deal withal*. And therefore we all need to have answerable Armor, from the Strength of the Everlasting Tower. For only the all-Conquering Spirit bears the Standard, and *displays the Colors*, and thereby wins the Prize, Triumphant over the strong Enemy.

[3F 8:9] But now it may be considered: *How long may be this Time of Spiritual War? For it seems to be somewhat severe and tedious, to be all our life-long in Conflict and War against the Nations in*

*ourselves, and also with an Evil, Cruel World, that can never agree with a Heavenly-Born Spirit.* True, that universally in all Ages past, the controversy between the Earthly Unregenerated part, and the Heavenly have held out the whole term of Life, and it has been as much as the Spiritual Man could do, to keep him at the Weapons end, to prevent an Invasion, or being carried away Captive, as Millions of Dark Minds are, and have been. But those who are right Warriors on the Lamb's side, have now girded on the Buckler of God's Salvation: Strong and Mighty in the Flaming-Chariot, attended with God's Invisible Hosts. Such will not be upon a defensive War only, but these will Subdue and Conquer, and will divide the Spoil, and take the Prey, and keep all under Subjection to the Conquering side.

### Biblical Precedents

[3F 8:10] For this we are not without some Precedents that did come hereunto, and made a visible show of Conquest. As some Patriarchs and Prophets before Christ: Who was the Head and Principal Conqueror, and is so still, in us, as He was in His Apostles, *John, Paul, Peter, and James*. These plainly Glorified in a Triumphant Victory, *having fought the good fight of Faith*, and doubtless did perfectly subdue all of the Man of Sin, and thereby were capable of Translation, of which no certain account has been given. But whether or not, of this we are sure: they died the common Natural Death, yet they were such Overcomers, as had right to Reign both in Heavenly and Earthly places. Which they had not only the foresight, but the Possession of, though in an invisible Sphere, and World, that is not known to mortals, and gathered to their Conquering Head and Captain, that we hope will bring us up in victory, through the whole part of the earthly-life subdued.

[3F 8:11] And not only so, but that all things in this earthy-principle shall be under control, and shall be assuredly bowed under the pure Birth of Life, for all shall flow into the Standard of the Spirit; That will appear in the Holy Sanctuary, that is Beautified with the Glory of *Lebanon*, according to those Ancient Prophecies, and what of late has been renewed to particular Saints in this Age. As the Sons of them that afflicted and despised the Holy Seed shall come bending, and bow themselves down at the Soles of their Feet, as owning the Lord's Sovereignty. Who will make all Kingdoms and Nations to serve, and pay their Tribute to them, who will be exalted to the Kingly Priesthood in this approaching Day. In which Violence shall no more be heard within the Borders of their Purified Land, because Salvation and Victory will be a defense of Glory. Their Brass shall be turned into Gold, and Iron into Silver. This verily the Lord, the Mighty Redeemer is hastening to bring to pass in its time.

[3F 8:12] Blessed and of great Renown will those be, to whom the Dominion shall first come down, that have bowed in themselves the Man of Sin. For none else can expect to be Rulers over much in this visible Region. To this time we have lived on God's Bills of Credit, which have passed to and again, as Prophecies, and Promises, and Words of Revelation, and Divine Inspeakings. But there is a time now foreseen, that is near, when we shall have the Golden Coin of Acting-Power and Might, put into our own Hands. May we once come but to out-live the War with *Gog and Magog*, we may hope somewhat of this Wonderful Time to see. What remains for us to do, is to observe, and comply with that pure Doctrine, which the Spirit has dropped in, which urges hard, that we might so run, as to divide this rich Prize with the Conquering Ones that are entered in to *Mount-Sion's* Wonders of Glory. Which will come to be opened in this Region, when the Seed of God shall rise to Victory in any one: for that's the Key that will forcibly open the Gate of *Jerusalem*, that has been hidden, and shut up from all Flesh, by a thick Wall of separation.

[3F 8:13] But to this purpose that Prophecy was repeated, that is Recorded in *Isaiah*, calling us to Mind, and to believe *Mount-Sion's* Reign is near, in which God's Kingdom of Priests will appear all in their sacred Ornaments, for whom the Isles do wait to bring their Sons from far, to Minster with their Riches and Substance, and to entreat for acceptance among those, who have been sought out, to be the Joy of many Generations: Because of breaking the way against all Storms and Floods, and thereby to come into that flourishing Land, which is only allotted for the New-born Brotherhood. Who are all of a Spiritual Production, through infusion of rarified immortal Essences, that so each one may be a perfect resemblance of God their Creator. This is that, which will make all well: so that which has been out of order, and has made the cause of Separation between God and us, will be removed.

[3F 8:14] How welcome will be a Messenger sent from the Great Shepherd, that has been so long with His invisible fold, that of a truth He is coming to make One Entire Flock, and to throw down the Wall of Partition. And this He certainly foretells by his Spirit, as the Jubilee-Bell daily rings in our Ear, to comfort us in our weary progress: For we would most willingly cease from War, Care, and Turmoil, and from everything that is included under the Curse. Oh, rest. How pleasant you appear, wreathed all in the Eternal Nuptial joy of a Celestial-Marriage with our Lord. Who verily would that we should by all these encouragements, be now ready prepared for to face Him, with a Graceful attire, all dignified for delight and joy; that after all Suspense, a Consummation may be pronounced, to all astonishment, while we are in this World. For this the Heavens are now working most mightily, to great Joy.

**March 19, 1678**  
**The Old Leaven**

[3F 8:15] §.This Word much followed me this Morning, being again often repeated: Let no Leaven be found in your Habitations. For there is an Appointed Feast for you to eat, who have right to the Sacrifice of the Passover, in which no Leaven of the Old Lump is therein to be tasted. Therefore search, and as you do find hereof, throw it out, that you may show yourselves strictly Obedient in all Sanctuary-Ordinances.

**March 20, 1678**  
**An Alarm in the Night**

[3F 8:16] §.In the night in a deep sleep, I saw a place, as a Tower for strength enclosed, and within it a Garden very richly replenished with Flowers and Plants of all sorts. And round about the Walls hung bright Armor of all kind, to Arm from Head to Foot. Which observing, I said to one by me, Surely this presages some War-like time, that is coming upon the Nation. But when I awaked and considered hereupon, there was another signification given to me, by this Word which spake in me: All-arm yourselves within, take down the Buckler, Breast-Plates and Shield, and be as Ten Thousand-strong, for the keeping of your Garden-Treasury, against which many devices are hatched to Rob, and Steal, and thereof to carry away. Therefore beware, and be found armed throughout. For the Holy Spirit is still herein your Friend, for giving advertisements against all intended evil.

**March 21. 1678**  
**The Interpretation**

[3F 8:17] §.This Morning many things were presented from the Deep Abyss, from where the Manifold Wisdom has fixed the Visible and Invisible Worlds, to great admiration. Somewhat hereof did stand open, in a more nearer prospect to my Internal Eye: but withdrew, so that I could give no clear



account, nor make any report of the Deep Mystery. Only this Word I had, saying: Keep close, and remember your solemn assignments in purity of Heart and Mind, to walk with God, and to stand in a Posture of Defense. That at every Alarm, which you may hear from the Evil Nations, you may take down readily from the Tower-Armory, and keep all the young set-Plants charily. For this advice was further given: It is far more easy to keep unclean and hurtful Spirits out, than when they have got in, to chase them out. The Holy Spirit sees it meet, so long as we are in this Tempting Region, to be stirring us up still, by the way of Remembrance, that so we may not slack our work.

### March 23, 1678 The Unknown Warfare

[3F 8:18] §.The many Vicissitudes attending from the Worldly-Spirit, striving and thronging for the laying of somewhat of offence still in our Garden-Walks, where only we should be entertained with Heaven's-Gales, blowing up the Odoriferous Sweets. But unsavory Weeds yet are permitted to spring, and to give forth the Evil Scents, so that hereby we find great grievance, till all of that kind be uprooted.<sup>4</sup> We cannot find Spiritual ease, and we cannot live all serene as in a *Lebanon*-Spring, till all Evil Essences and Spirits be cast out. The pure Unction is hereunto assuredly driving us before Him, lest we should linger and lag behind. Who upon my Soul's groanings, did give in this Word: Your burdens shall be all born away upon the Shoulders of *Immanuel*, who is touched with your grievances, and will break away the Yoke that is heavy, and set you free, that you may follow God fully, in a *Warfare unknown*; and that you shall be discharged of all those entanglements, that have been so retarding to your Rising-Life. Only mind your Advocate, with earnest Prayer, for the accomplishment of this thing.

[3F 8:19] §.This Word came to me, upon some dubious working thoughts in my mind, saying: Do you indeed Love the Lord your God with all flowings from your Heart? Then fear not to trust Him withal, in whatever to you pertains; who will assign to you Wisdom, Strength, and Honor, which shall be your stability.

### March 25, 1678 The Living Statues: A Vision

[3F 8:20] §.Oh how great an aversion is it, to a Mind that is great and enlarged,<sup>5</sup> according to an Eternal Birth-Degree, to bow and stoop, and to be humbled under things transitory. When once it comes to calculate its high Spiritual Nativity, thereby to understand what it is born unto, in reference to that which is the right and True Heir, consisting of Powers and Celestial Dignity, though under minority. But a Word did seasonable come in upon the bemoaning this under-age, saying: Be of good Hope; The Dark, the Weak, and Impotent-State is out-wearing, and you will see the Lord's Jubilee, in which the first-allotted Inheritance shall return again to you.

### Vision of Two Beautiful Statues

[3F 8:21] Then I had a strange kind of Vision, of a sight of Two Statues, that were in a Room where I was, and they were very beautiful, having all perfect accomplishments to outward sight, greatly taking the Eye, whereupon I made towards them, but they moved not; then concluded they

---

<sup>4</sup> SDV Note: “displanted” in the original. Obsolete.

<sup>5</sup> SDV Note: “bigened” in the original. JL may have meant “biggened,” which is now obsolete.

were formal Figures, that were not capable of Conversation with any, as being without intellectuals or motion of Life. Whereupon I, considering they were very amiable, and what great pity it was that they were not in an active motion; I found in myself somewhat eagerly earnest, to provoke the stirring and awakening of a Life in them; and hereunto I was busying all my internal abilities. And then they suddenly stirred, and made towards me with great and sweet affableness of Spirit; which though at first I so much desired their acquaintance, yet when they spake, and came, and took me by the Hand, I was somewhat shy and afraid of them. But they said: *Be not surprised, though you see that which was dead and slain to revive and live again. This is a Mystery you may further see into, as you believe in the Resurrection.*

## Chapter 9

March 29, 1678

### The Parable of a Mill: In Vision

[3F 9:1] §.The Word that visited me this Morning was this; When to God your Father you Pray, Watch, and Weigh all Words you say, Let that Golden Plumb-line of the Spirit measure out all of your requests, that your Prayers henceforth may carry force, and not go on in a customary fruitlessness, according to what now is in general use. Therefore to the Wise understanding Spirit repair, to draw up all your Petitions, who only knows what will be heard. Let Him only intercede in you; and learn to stop the Spirits, that would go forth in forms of Words, where is lacking<sup>6</sup> the pure white *Sail* of Faith to spread over the moving Wheel.

April 1, 1678

### The Fine Framed Mill\*

[3F 9:2] §.Then was given me a resemblance to confirm this Word, as thus: There was presented to me a Green Flourishing-Hill, and upon this high ascent there seemed to be a fine framed-*Mill*, that stood still, and did no way move to grind that which was brought into it. Upon which the Person who was within, was called upon to move the engine that thereto did belong: But he said they were too heavy, he could not stir them, and waited for a gale of Wind. Nay (the Voice cried), *First put on clean and white Sails*. For those which were upon it appeared to be all sullied and torn. Unless you observe this, no Gale of Wind will be effectual. Of this make application to yourselves.

April 2, 1678

### Interpretation of the Former Vision

[3F 9:3] §.The foregoing Vision was explained to me very emphatically: Concerning the *fine Timbered-Mill*, it was showed that it signified the internal Frame and Habitation of the Spirit, which sometimes may be in cessation of motion, through the impairing of those Spiritual Engine of the superior Mind, that should powerfully work in their course, for grinding down that which is Food for the Spirit to live upon. And what is that, but that precious Grain that is sown, and dissolved in the Ground of Christ, the Lord's pure Humanity. And we, as in Union with Him, have the same Life-Seed buried in our Refined Earth; and of it springs up into a substantial Grain, contacted all of Heavenly-matter, and so an entire Body.

[3F 9:4] But in this lies the Great Mystery, to have it made ready for Bread to eat thereof, and *to live forever*. And how is this to be done, but by the superior Engines of the Soul, as they are all set a work for the breaking and bruising this Golden Grain into a Powder. For while it remains in an unbroken Body, no virtual Power and Strength can be felt. That is, as most do run up their Eye to a Glorified Humanity; not considering that this must be drawn down into a dispersive Power, that so it might move through all and every property: and this is that which becomes principally the *saving Jesus* to us.

---

<sup>6</sup> SDV Note: “wanting” in the original.

[3F 9:5] But it may be asked: *What these Engines are? Or, what are these working-Powers, in a well, holy framed-mind that can cull and separate, and winnow out from the husk and stalk, in which first appearance, it comes forth unready Meat for the Spirit thereof to eat?* Now, what must unhusk it of its chaffy-clothing, but the threshing instrument, which must have a time to grow up into ripeness: then there will be a more easy separation of the vile Husk from the solid Grain. Thus through hand beating the Spiritual-seed is made meet for its Master's use. But it must undergo and endure many a sharp blow, before the chaffy Matter will fly away, which is known by experience, by many tribulations that we pass through, fanning away that which sticks so close to the pure Life-seed that is saved, and separated, for so choice and eminent use, as to be dissolved, and made diffusive through every part, as the only restorative Medicine: Which may make a full cure of the broken State, that the sinful husk of Mortality has plunged us into.

[3F 9:6] Therefore the Spirit by the similitude shows, what powerful Engines are to move for the grinding down that which is the *Golden-Stone*, that is to make the Transformation upon the Earthly part: For we well know that while the Sails stand still, no increase or multiplying-food is brought into any effect; Which has occasioned the great suffering in Spiritual-Famine, and Nakedness, upon which the Holy Spirit counseled us to look into this Mysterious Thing, and to observe these following Rules:

[3F 9:7] §.The *First* is to pluck off those old withered Sails, which were opened to be the Dead, Actless, and Lifeless Faith, that the sensitive Spirit has putrefied and spoiled, so that the Heavenly-Gales could have no Power to move the Wheel; nor can have force when the Sails of Faith are so torn and divided between doubting and believing, which is shown to be the main stop, that the framed-Mill cannot work.

[3F 9:8] §.The *Second* Rule is to be of one absolute and entire Will, that may resist all contradiction to the ancient and right kind of Faith, which the Saints of old possessed, by which all Wonders were wrought. One true Grain of Faith bruised and dispersed through Nature's Ground, will flow out, to do and effect that which the whole World cannot check. Oh, where in this day are to be found those who are trained up in Wisdom's-School, to know the Art and Skill of spinning Faith's white Linen-Sails, where is no Warp of the Woolen of sense, in which fear and doubting are mingled. It is no marvel, when we are called up to stir the superior Engines of our Minds, that they are so dull and heavy, they do not move. It is well given us to see, where the obstruction is. Therefore the Holy Spirit tells us that the great need is for us to learn to spin the Thread of Faith, much more fine, single and longer out; for all yet have been too short, both for breadth and height, for the spreading out in concurrence with the *Eternal Gulf* that blows most deep from the Celestial-World. Therefore into this Secret we must search. And whom shall we make our Friend herein, but the Wisdom of the Mighty One, who will teach us to make this fine Linen-Cloth for Sails, and to cloth our Household with Scarlet. Where to none we shall be inferior, if once we come to make the Engine-Powers of God's Spirit in us to display, then it will be our day, wherein Strength, Riches, and Honor shall encompass us round as our blessing, when we have found this *One Jewel* of pure Faith.

[3F 9:9] §.O dear Wisdom, to you we must repair for this, and entreat your favor very much, *to drink of that Spicy-Cup: One Magia draught of which*, will make us of a sharp and quick understanding, to perceive what lies under the covering of Humanity; Which has been so thick a Veil, that we have good reason to inquire, what will rarify the sight, that so invisible things may be conspicuous, and naked to the internal Eye: for that affects and carries the Heart along with it. There is a Golden Ball, some which Wisdom's hand must drop into the Fire-Eye of the Soul, to make it of a bright shining Light; to be in the Vision of God; As *John* was, who could never have beheld the Heavenly

things themselves, characterized out in such a Metaphorical way, but through the Gift of this rich Salve: Which in a wonderful Mystical Way is applied to the dim-Eye, which can behold nothing of Celestial objects in the higher Sphere.

### **The Perfect Medicine**

[3F 9:10] Therefore this precious Ointment is all meet to be sought for; And though some have been here withal Anointed, for divine Openings and internal Revelations, yet that is not sufficient. There is something else that this is to effect, through often application hereof, for it must be a *continued Act* from the Hand of the Spirit of Wisdom, till *Vision shall transform* into the likeness of those perfect Objects, and transparent things beheld. Then it does its work fully, according as it is written: *When we see Him, we shall be like unto Him.* Then all the Engine-Powers of the Soul in their Primary-Glory will act, and discharge whatever has clogged, and been a stop to their superior motion, having new Spiritual Faculties and members to work withal the mighty Deeds of God. Indeed, then there will be no more complaint, that the Eye is blind, the Ear deaf, the Tongue bound, the Arm short for marvelous things to effect. Now then from this considerable Teaching-Word, consider what we are to follow on still for: till with this perfect Medicine, and all-Sovereign Potion, we are enriched by free donation. Ah Lord! For this remember us: who have sought this rich Grain, and *Eye-Salve*, wholly and fully.

### **April 7, 1678 The Blessing**

[3F 9:11] §.The greater part of this Night, I passed in a high Spiritual Contact, with the Mystical Presence of that immense goodness seen, wherein the Spirit-Life Essence exists. But before I could draw in all Spiritual Forces and Powers, for the vivifying and chafing the Life-Blood of the interior Man's Will and Mind, I had somewhat of a deep conflict, with which I encountered, before I could reach into Divine Sensation, and Feeling Touches from the Invisible Body. All which had been suspended more than usual, which was my grievance, of which I did much unburden my Soul, in a silent way of praying, that was in heaviness through many Temptations, and I much pressed to be delivered out from them: Remembering that was one of Christ's Petitions in the Lord's Prayer, not to be led into Temptation, but if in it, then to find an escape out of it.

### **The Sumptuous Chair**

[3F 9:12] Which now was experienced, by a manifestation of a Sumptuous-Chair, let down with a Person setting in it, with a Crown upon His Head, very Amiable and Glorious, reaching out His Arms, calling to come, and to prostrate before this Mercy-Seat, from which I heard the blessing pronounced, saying: *God, even your God, gives you of the Dew of Heaven, and the Precious Things, out of the Everlasting Deep, and let People serve, and Nations bow down to the Rising-Star, that shall have Dominion over your Earth.* This was both amazing and consoling, after my Agony; Drawing me up, and transporting my Spirit into an excessive sweetness of Love's-freedom with Him, whom I had seen in Vision. From which my Spirit found all liberty of Speech to Echo to this Love-Salutation back again, so that my Night was turned into Day, and my Heaviness into Joy.

### **How to Keep a Raised Posture**

[3F 9:13] §.But now the great concern is: *How to keep up in a raised divine posture of Mind, answerable to the degree of Light and Revelation given?* For it is shown, that is what will entail and

make sure this great blessing. And the Holy Unction gave further Counsel: To present to the Father, (who is now set upon the Mercy-Seat) with an *Abel's* offering, to wit, with the firstling and fat of all the Flock, that is to be found in the field of refined Nature. This verily will commend us to God our Father, and give us favor with Him, so that we need not matter all Creaturely unkindness. If *Jehovah* will us bless, and be our countenance, it will be *Jacob's* enough, to which alone let our Faith stick. For there is very much in it, as the Holy Ghost shall make out the property of Blessing, in all its various outflowing Powers, according to these particulars unfolded:

[3F 9:14] §.As *First* from the Dew of Heaven falling down, to enrich and make the Seed to spring, which lies under the binding Earth. The *Celestial Mist* is that which makes the inward Ground to thrive and multiply to the Thousand fold, as *Abraham's* visible increase of Cattle and Goods were; which grew to that abundance, as the Places were too strait to contain them, wherever he went. Even so it may be considered Spiritually of this degree of Blessing, upon whom it shall rest. This internal Frame, and Model, as confined within this form of Corporiety, will be found much too strait: for the out-birth must depart and give way, that so the strife may cease, and full enlargement may come in, according to the utmost bounds of an *Abraham's* blessing; which was so excessive great figuratively, to let us know and understand the Line of Blessing, that it should run in this Age far more high, as we shall come capable hereof.

[3F 9:15] Now let us inquire: *What will qualify us for Blessings of this high Nature and Degree, that so we may not be the Tail but the Head, in all Rule and Authority, over the Nations within and the World without?* The way and rule which the Holy Spirit has prescribed is Obedience to the Law of Faith, whose precepts run the Soul upon the Ground of all-sufficiency: Nothing less, than God's all-sufficiency stands before its Eye; resting upon that Omnipotency, that calls those things that are not, for to be; that says not in the Heart, *How can this be, that a dead Womb should bring forth a Living Seed, or the vile sinful Body be made pure, and unrebukable, nay, Angelical and Powerful?* For to them in whom the Law of Faith is written, what is it that shall be impossible? If they decree anything in this Spirit of Faith, Almighty Power is at hand to make it good. If they will to do any miraculous cures, either internal, or external, it may be effected by keeping to the exact rule and method of this highest degree of Faith; which has been sunk down so deep in Nature's Ground, that it is incredible that ever it should be brought up in any for activity. But the Earth shall not always cover her slain, for the Celestial-Dew, shall make this dead Faith to live in Christ's raised Body; and yet do wonders again in those, who are of the Sealed-Number.

[3F 9:16] §.Then the *Second* qualification in order to the obtaining this high degree of Blessing, is the pure working source of *Love*, that boils up like a pot of perfumed Ointment. This carries a strong force indeed. For nothing has greater power with God the Father, than the strong melting Fire of Love, which overlooks all checks and denials, being resolved to pursue the Blessing. When *Isaac* put *Jacob* hard to it, to have a confirmation whether he was the right and Firstborn Heir of the Blessing, the great vehement Love made him plead and stand to it, and over-look the difficulty of a repulse from his Father, and thereby he supplanted *Esau* in his Birth-right. Likewise again, when he was proved the second time, if he had not wrestled hard and resolvedly, not to let go his hold, till the Blessing was again confirmed upon him, he had lost it.

### Ardent Love

[3F 9:17] Thus through the continued pursuit, he conquered all: Which the Holy Teacher has called up for your example, not only to be strong in Faith, but ardent in Love; Which has so much of God's

own nature in it, as it overcomes all things. So that it may be said, what resistance can be made against Love that is pure and unfeigned? It dissolves the very Stone, wherein all Powerful virtue lies. It enters where nothing else can. It is a Spirit-flame, that can ascend, where the Mine of all Treasury lies. Our Lord Jesus knew the great efficaciousness of this Love, when He prayed, that the Love where withal the Father did love Him, might be in them, who were given unto Him, for that would be of mighty Potency. Therefore to whomever it is given for to Love much, such will have the greatest share of the Blessing. Now by all this, our eyes may be opened to see what will necessarily qualify us. Whereupon we are exhorted to mind, and look into it, and to examine whether we have this high provoking Love kindled in us, which may mingle with God's own Flaming Nature of Love, so as to kiss each other. Then may it be concluded, this may be the time of Love, that whatever we ask, we may receive. Oh happy were we, if we could arrive to this vehement strong Love, Faith working with it wisely, maintaining the Furnace, that may keep it up boiling.

[3F 9:18] Truly it is evidently showed unto me, that this has been the great set-back and let, in the rising of the perfect Love, to wit, the Water-floods that have so often quenched the Furnace, so that we never could keep up Love to its boiling height. Sometimes in the heat of a *Love-Passion from the persuasion of the Holy Trinity, it may force pure Love from us*, then it is cooled again, as sensible objects and things come in to smother the Life-flame. So that till the Love fire gets the mastery, we must expect to be great sufferers, and thereby the Blessing sought will be still prolonged, till Love gets the Victory by *immutability*. But now what is to be considered for our help in this respect? Shall we always be subject to this mobility and life-extinguishments, and Love-coolings? No: the Ghostly Comforter has proposed a remedy. If we can give to Him our eyes, ears, and heart, then we shall have His Love shed into us, so as to see it a bubbling-spring.

[3F 9:19] Now then it is given us, as in a Glass for to see, what will provoke, and raise our Love to this high degree of a Nuptial-tie, which never can be loosened, either in Time or Eternity. Oh! What shall be *able to separate from the Love of God* (now observe the emphasis) *that is in Christ Jesus?* This is that, which ties the knot so fast between God and us, that there is no loosening of it; because His Blood-Life is so shed into our Nature, and gradually changes us into His perfect humanity. But this Birth comes on by degrees to the *Unity* of the Faith. While it is young, wisdom and care must be taken for to hide it: for there is a great confederacy in the *Herodian-Kingdom* to root out and destroy it. (This the wise in Spirit do foresee.) If preserved till unto full Age, then this Love Birth will undoubtedly be a Conqueror, and will come and reign, till no more an evil Spirit be left to offend, throughout all Nature's properties. But during this state of infancy we are warned (as *Joseph* was) to fly out from all that would kill in the place of breaking forth, and growing up, and to make away with this Heir.

### Celestial Food

[3F 9:20] Now the Virgin-Mother of this Holy-Birth is all tender, to fore-spy any conspiracy, and it always gives its own natural, and celestial food, that it may be nourished in the Wilderness, till the time, and half time is accomplished. Then it is to go forth in strength, power, and force: and then we need no *Herod* or *Pontius Pilate* to fear, because raised above their low Sphere, empowered from God-Almighty, to possess the Blessing of the Everlasting Kingdom, in Peace, Joy, and Righteousness. As our Lord ascended into Heaven, blessing His own whom He left in the world: now again He is to descend, with all and every Heavenly blessing, to bless all those in whom this Love-Seed has been tenderly cherished. For this the Holy Spirit has now left with us in charge, to watch over it, as

*Joseph and Mary* did over Jesus during His minority; Because this is the Seed to whom only the utmost riches, and fullness of every blessing in heavenly or earthly places belongs. Thus in the way of divine rule we are still to go on, and not as impatient to think it tedious or long, but wait for this Birth of Love in us to grow more mighty and strong, to enter us into the very essential Being; *Wherefrom we may command all and every kind of blessing*. Thus in blessing we shall be blessed. To which, O Love-Flame, bring us up above all seas and floods that would either kill or quench it.

**April 11, 1678**  
**The Lamb's Warriors**

[3F9:21] §.This Word given by way of Counsel to us: Come, come, and hide within the Bridegroom's Chamber. For Vials are upon pouring out upon the outward Court and Whorish Principle; Haste and fly away from whatever of this you see stirring in your own properties of Nature, and in this respect, hide from your own Flesh, for that is all treacherous. Therefore be sure to run into the secret Rock-cleft that is very near to you, nay, *in you*. For destruction and waste are determined upon the goodliness of all Flesh. Then I had a sudden prospect of a great Train of Bodies, that gave a luster, and moved with such swiftness, as no Horse could keep pace with them. And it was said: *These are those that shall fight the Battles of the Lamb, and bring Him to reign on (and over) the Earth; that all Kingdoms and Nations may serve Him, as appearing in His Saints.*



## Chapter 10

April 13, 1678  
The Nest-Hunters

[3F 10:1] §.This Night in the Sleep-Magia, I saw several Nest-Hunters, that searched the common Hedges and Trees, that were reachable, the Birds so soon as they were Hatched, to take them away. And when they found Eggs only, they sucked them. Such were these ravenous Birds of prey, though in Corporeal shapes. Then was there a Cry from on high, saying: *Thus it will be while any build their Nest, where a common thorough-fair is, that is not raised above the stature of a Man. Consider the wise Eagle that builds on high, where the Vultures Eye cannot spy.*

[3F 10:2] This may be fitly applied to this our present State. Which thus was explained: That every pure motion is as the Offspring of the Heavenly Being, and it from its first Conception, a warm Birth-Nest must have, where nothing may disturb, scatter, or disperse it. Which will be in peril here-of, if placed in the highway Hedge, which does present the common thorough-fair of the Mind: The *Nimrod*-Hunters will certainly take and root out every sublime Cogitation, before they are perfectly winged with Power to fly up to their Author. Therefore wisely we are cautioned, to build on high, Eagle-like, above the stature and reach of the Man of fallen Reason, whose arm will be too short to reach those Holy Faith Conceptions, which are hatched on that high Cedar-Tree, which in Christ, who is the rich Ground of *Lebanon*, grows above all those Shrubs, and wild Plants of profuse imaginari-ness, that are so hurtful. Therefore evermore lodge your thoughts on high.

April 16, 1678  
The Essential Matter of the  
Universal Blessing

[3F 10:3] §.This considerable Word passed through me, as I was longing, and in an eager pursuit to *find God*, and to *lose* that which was not capable of such inconceivable Purity and Glory, abiding in this Mortal frame, which is compacted together of sensitive parts. Now it was cried in my hearing, *What can retain God?* Nothing verily, but the New Heavens framed in Man's Nature, all Spiritual, descending from the Eternal Element, for congealing such a Body, as the high Spirit of Eternity may move free, in supernatural faculties: for no such Schism is to be in the Body of God. This is that wonderful Creation that Jesus Christ will work forth, through the Holy Ghost, in those who would ever live *in God*, and forget the earthly self. Now then we are counselled to cherish that rising Birth of Love that would reach, and bring us, to this Principal-Dignity.

[3F 10:4] §.The Spirit also further showed, that in this *New Model*, the Essential Ground of *Universal Blessing* is existing: for what else can *Bless* till it be leavened, all through with the rich spice of the Deity, for a thorough change in every property of the Soul. This is that, which must renew Nature into its Primal Beauty of Wisdom and Perfection. Nothing can do it, but what is open from the deep Original-Ground, from where Spirits are generated in Angelical figures, for the bearing a very God-like Signature. This is the Essential matter and substance, of the *High blessing*. This is the substance of the Most High blessing, which we are directed to, as the Root of all Eternal matter: from which the Tree of fruitful Blessings, in all their distinct and various operations, successively acts forth.

[3F 10:5] For the bundle of Life, and the Treasures out of Wisdom's Ocean, may be commandable, when God in any one shall introduce this high Nature, and so in pure Essences. That which may work through every part, for the over-clothing it with excellence of Spirit, as with its covering. Which the Lord will grace the Birth of Love withal: For the revenue of Love's Blessing will come then into our own Hands, that we shall have the Power of disposal. As the Father committed all Power to the Son, who through suffering had learned Obedience: so we being found after His Example, may derive such high credit from our Lord Jesus, as to be found Incorporated, and Dignified in the very Life-Essence of this our Lord Jesus Christ.

**April 20, 1678**  
**Redeem the Hour**

[3F 10:6] §.This Morning this Word sprang in me, saying: *Time's Mystery will shortly be finished: for the half hour's Minutes are running swift.* Whoever then are wise will redeem the Spirit's Day, before the Night of Great Tribulation come upon them. It is meet to know and understand what the Lord is a doing in this day. The blind in Mind, and the gross of Heart, can see nothing hereof: But where the Eye of the Mind is clear, and the Heart purified, they will come to know beforehand great and secret things from the Counsel of the Lord. But then the Holy Spirit gives caution fully hereunto, to attend for continual inquiry, since that is all necessary, for seeing into what lies beyond the reach of all Mortal sense. The Heaven-born and Illuminated Spirit is apt alone to lay its Ear to hear, what will still be spoken from the Lord. Because by the *Out-spoken Word* into us, we do, in Spiritual nature, attain to the perfect Measure and Degree thereof. Therefore it is the concern of our Superior-Life to wait hereupon: as the outward Man is in daily Labor for his food; so we for the getting in this our Eternal Manna, our Life-food. For we well know our strength will else fail, and then we are fit for no work in our Spiritual calling. Which neglect by no reason is now to be allowed, lest the Night come suddenly upon us.

**May 8, 1678**  
**A Call to the Mount of Divine Vision**

[3F 10:7] §.A Call there is to the Exiled, to return into the secret Pavilion, where God only does appear, and declares His Living Testimony. For who else can have freedom of conversation from this high Sphere, with the Perfect One. To which height of Dignity, some may be called out of this gross Earth, as Companions for the Holy Trinity. But then we must sue out a divorce from all Creatures, and things that are mean and base. Because the Just One will appropriate to Himself all that is in the Mind and Will, there the Tabernacle of Witness is all-powerfully opened. Therefore, there is an absolute necessity so to do, for such, who would maintain intimate Friendship with their God. They must keep from all and every defilement, which readily clings about the Spirit of the Mind. This by experience has done great injury to the espoused Soul, upon which Wisdom has uttered her Voice, crying through me, saying: *O foolish of Heart, when will you be of such a perfect understanding, as to foresee and avoid the dark and slippery way, which leads from God's Mount of Vision. Behold and see, the Tabernacle-Lamp is set for light, that so you may see your way, and be guided back again to the Most Holy Place of Purity. For this know, you cannot blossom nor be fruitful, without you still abide in God's own Sanctuary, whereby Living Waters ever flow thereupon, to make it grow.*

[3F 10:8] §.Then after this Word, there was a representation of a Person, in the visible Firmament, walking there all *Ethereal*, Pure, and Bright. But while I fastened my Eye upon it, it descended, and as soon as it came into this Region, the same that appeared so Celestial, was changed into a Terrestri-

al Corporeal form, like to the Inhabitants of this World. But soon after, the same ascended up, and walked in the Air, as it was before all *Ethereal*. When I came to consider it, the meaning hereof was opened unto me, by the present Comforter, who after the way of Spirit, gave it thus unto me: That this clear and *Ethereal* Body, that appeared in the Element, was for this end shown, to convince us of that high and pure Region, or *Eternal Element*: whereto we should Ascend, and therein have our Walks in a pure and uncorrupted Air, from the super Celestial Heavens: for that should be ever our settled Place and Home.

[3F 10:9] §.For this Vision did present our own Figures in a new *Celestial-Body*. For this has been experienced at Times and Seasons, when the Mind has been drawn out from all low and Terrestrial things, and suffered nothing of this outward Principle so much as to touch it. Then immediately it has been over-clothed with the one Pure Element, and all in Light environed: though it be yet, as to the outward appearance, still in the form of a Mortal Body; which cannot hinder nor prevent the Spirit of the Mind, to pass away in its own Incorporeal clothing, to its Eternal AETHER. From *where* it came, *thereto* it will be often ascending: When once it comes to know its own high Consistency, from and by which it may take its flight; which is revealed to be these Powers that the Spiritual Body is compounded of, and are hid within the Natural.

[3F 10:10] §.The *First* is a *Potency of Will*, that is so resolute for Conversation, within the Circle of the *Pure Element*, with the Holy Trinity, that it will admit of no control, but can resist and put by all subtle drawings down, and drivings back, from its Father's Mansion, fixed in the Heavenly Region. Because it knows whenever the Will-Spirit has been prevailed on by the Wiles and Insinuating Powers of Darkness from this evil World, so as to fall in, and to beat Amity and Concord with it: and accordingly to fashion itself to the course and manner of the Inhabitants of this World; What Internal Soul-sufferings it has been under, which none can discern, or judge of, but those who have been Spiritually exercised therein: Whose lot and gift it is to be admitted into those free, and high Familiarities with the Holy Trinity; For such to come down into a low and Earthly Conversation, as a great aggravation of Trouble and Sorrow to the Spirit, that has had its walks with God, in the Light of Life, where all Joy, Peace, and Tranquility, do surround as a Guard.

[3F 10:11] §.Now the *Other* Powers that are helps to wing the Soul, for its Bosom-rest, are *Faith* and *Love*, they having the Eternal gusts from the *Ethereal* Region, do mount with Mighty force the Potent Will-Spirit, into the Celestial Harbor. Which so Clarifies and puts another Form and Transparency, so long as it abides there. It perfectly finds itself fashioned into another Image, which most suitably agrees, for fellowship with the Supreme goodness, and the Holy Train of *Just and Perfect Spirits*.

[3F 10:12] §.Oh, who is able to set forth the Glory and Excellency of such a Transportation as this, when the Heavens shall bow, and as a Curtain be drawn about, enclosing round the Holy aspiring Mind, which is all filled from the Fountain-head of Springing Joys, and unconceivable Pleasures (as the tastes or firstfruits of what will be the constant Food, Portion and Habitation), from the refreshing Glory of God, opening in the Life's Center; Which as an Ocean-Sea will flow to cover and drown the Gross, Dark, and Earthly part, that nothing thereof may anymore Trouble it.

[3F 10:13] §.But it may be Queried, *Who and where are such, that can be with the bright Heavens in such a high degree, thus involved with God, for any duration of time? Or abstracted with God from all of this Earthly Region?* In answer to this: It is no new thing, but what has been Witnessed in foregoing Ages. A cloud of Witnesses is recorded hereof in the Holy Scriptures, as Enoch, and Moses, Elisha, Elias, Isaiah, Daniel, Ezekiel, Steven, Paul, and John: They were caught up with God to

see, and hear, what the invisible Heavens did show. From which they gave forth all their Records, from clear Sight and Inspiration; upon which all the Holy Patriarchs, and Prophets, and Apostles attended. They neither framed nor formed any matter, but as the Holy Ghost gave it unto them, knowing no other Ministry, but what was immediately dictated unto them by Vision and Revelation. They were contented to be dumb and silent, till the Lord gave them Words, *fresh* Words, from time to time to utter; They who are called hereunto, were not to go off their Watch-Tower, but to keep to their undefiled walks, where the Spirit from Jesus meets with a full lading of all precious Truths.

[3F 10:14] §.But it may be further Objected: *There is now, and has been a long season, a mighty stop to the running streams of these Revelations. If none should Preach or Minister out of the old Store, there would be a Famine indeed, throughout the whole Earth, and barrenness and deadness would be the effects of such silence.*

[3F 10:15] As to this grand Objection, Mind and give Credit to that Spirit, which has not ceased to reveal God's secrets, and to give forth to the pure in Heart his Counsel. Which was this: The former Words and Testimonies given forth by inspiration have been, and are of sacred use, as the Spirit shall them open, and expound, and take up a fresh the deep Mysteries therein hid, for to unfold. As the Holy Scriptures themselves may be divided into these parts: Historical, Doctrinal, Prophetical, Allegorical, and Parabolical. Wherein are included such Mysteries as will puzzle any, Nay, the highest light of Reason and Wisdom of the whole Creation, to find out; till the *Holy Ghost* be poured forth, for the clear and right sight, and understanding of those wonderful secrets, that by obscure Similitudes are set forth. Which are as a strong enclosure and seal upon them, till the Spirit be poured from on High, to give the true Sense and Knowledge of God's own Mind in them. As there are Prophecies contained in them, that are yet to be fulfilled, they are not to be neglected nor despised, but owned, as the express of God's Mind; that is not to be shut up, nor confined, but enlarged upon by the same Spirit, that did in that day inspire those, who were anointed hereunto: And now again present to open the rich Bank, from which those *firstfruits* of Revelation were drawn forth.

### The Vast Treasury

[3F 10:16] For there is yet *a vast Treasury behind*, that is to be fetched out: *But by whom?* Not by any common Spirit, that would both a Heavenly and Earthly interest drive on together. *No.* My Lord has said it again and again, *It cannot be.* That any such searcher can be meet to enter into those unknown depths, is all impossible, but such Spirits, as can hereunto wholly addict themselves: And withal do find some mighty Drawings, and Instigations, from the Supreme working Agent, that would employ them in this high Ministry. And therefore He makes choice of those who are Vigilant, Constant, and Vehement in Love, and carried out beyond all Faintings, Discouragements, Fears, and Dauntings, as not caring to give offence to Earthly awing Spirits, which Iron Bar upon this account, he must be resolute to break through: For perfect Love rides over all fear of this kind. Which like a *Sapphire* Burning Stone, goes through a Mountain of Earth, and as Lightning burns up all Briers, and every thorny Shrub, that stands in its way.

[3F 10:17] For of such a resolute Spirit, the Lord's Holy Seers and Prophets must resolve in themselves to be: Or else what can be entrusted with them, in Eternal Counsels and Secrets, from out of Wisdom's Treasury? Who requires the whole Bark of the Mind, as knowing, she has rich Goods enough to replenish it withal: and likes not that the Soul (who to this high Function is set a part), should take in any trashy or light matters, and concerns; for that does make Confusion, and a Wrack in the Mind. For by known experience, it raises the Dark Mists, and Muddies the Crystal Glass,

through which we do see Eternal objects and things. But the *Crowds and Noise of this Earthy Camp* put a stop to the Inspeakings, and Eternal Sounds, which are sent forth from God's Throne.

[3F 10:18] §. Now by all this, the Spirit and Word of Truth shows us, what is required of those, who are to be Stewards of the Heavenly Mysteries, and who are to be lodged in Christ's Bosom of Revelation, as His Friend and Bride, *to renew a fresh stock of Light, Wisdom, and Understanding, for the completing what is yet behind.* The reason why we have stuck at such a low stature in this matter, is because we have not kept up to our *Ethereal* Region. But according as the Vision did show, have often dropped down therefrom, as not able to keep our *Sapphire*-Habitation, till such time as our Natures were so sublime, as nothing of this Earthly-Climate could be able to change, as to the Face and Purity of our Minds: or any Corrupted Soil deface our Heavenly Image.

[3F 10:19] For thus it was with our Lord Jesus, who is set forth for our Pattern: From whose Spirit, we may be raised to this high Degree, as to meet Him in this Pure Element, in the Heavenly Place, to hear and see wondrous things; if we are contented to trust ourselves beyond the Shadows of what in common has been seen, and to commit ourselves to the *safe conduct* of the Spirit, and so to launch with Him into that unknown Circle-Element, where only Pure Eternal *Sapphire*-Spirits appear, and only declare matters of high and Eternal import; Which puts a Divine and Transparent Beauty of Holiness upon each one, who are hereto carried up. For as Earthly Inhabitants do Smell all of the course Rudiments of this World, and are black and deformed, from the intemperate Element, to which they are Subjected: So behold and see, you would among these, obtain a high and more excellent Degree of shining Purity, by something of that Spicy-Element. *Oh, that someone or other, would adventure, upon the terms Specified, to give a new Probatum in this Last Age.*

## Chapter 11

### May 10, 1678 The Key of the Properties of Eternal Nature

[3F 11:1] §.Being waiting this Morning in my Spirit, for some fresh Discovery and Visitation, all being quiet and still within, I then saw a Place, whereupon was the Engraving of a Key, held by the Form of a Hand. And there was written about it: *This is that, which has Power to open the Seven Properties of Eternal Nature.* The Engraving was so plain, as I could read it, though my outward Eyes were closed. Ah Lord! Open this Deep Thing, and show it in its own Simplified meaning; for sure there is much in it.

### May 12, 1678 The Mountain-Seal

[3F 11:2] §.This Word I had further given me upon these Properties: A great Mountain of Earth yet lies upon them and before them; therefore it is impossible for it to dissolve away. Grudge not therefore your time here wholly to spend, and fixedly here stand, imploring and calling upon Great Jehovah (from His great Name Engraved within the Table of your Heart); then may you see it rend away, as *Joshuah* did by that Name, *Jah*, divide *Jordan's* Floods, and so make this Mountain to pass away: That the Key may come to reach the *Seven Properties*, which will surely bring to the perfect Restoration.

### May 15, 1678 The Interpretation

[3F 11:3] §.The Vision of the *Key*, which opens the *Seven Properties* of Eternal Nature, was to me explained, from the Spring of Wisdom, and Fountain of Understanding. For which I besought with great earnestness the immense Goodness, for that Spirit which might sound the depths hereof. Whereupon this Word was ministered: *Where Truth is found in the Inward Parts, there I will cause to know Wisdom.* That is this Key that lies hid in the Hidden Mind, that only can unlock Eternal Nature, which has lain as a Mountain-Seal, fast enclosed, and shut up under Sin's defiling Nature. Therefore all need there is, for the calling up the high Counsel of the Holy Trinity, to make this heavy Mountain to pass away; Which is that dark Form and Body of Sin that so vigorously exercises its adverse properties, in Nature's depravities. Which while they be in their active force, the Superior Powers of Eternal Nature are as over-clouded and extinct.

[3F 11:4] §.Now the Holy Inspirer proceeds in this method: First to show what are the *Adverse Properties*, which must be brought to an Annihilation, before the other can break forth. Our strange introduced Birth has the Essence of all Evil in it, opening from a Dark Ground: from which our degenerated Nature puts forth many evil Properties, as harshness, wrathfulness, bitterness, also, envy, malice, hatred, and strength of self-love towards the pampering up this strange Monster, in the Pride and vain-glory of an earthly-life, in craft and covetousness. These are the firstfruits that put forth themselves from the dark Ground of *Dying*, and *Temporary* Nature. But this we have not only to do withal, for to put to Condemnation: But other Qualities there are, that are to be Purged out of all Na-

ture's Ground. Though these Qualities are of a more seeming good, in Relation to a God and to his Holiness in Worship, yet here they must come to the Furnace-Trial, before the Judge of the Inward Court, that is set in the Mind to judge between the Dead and Quick Essences, and to search out, what is alive at the Root, and what is dead.

[3F 11:5] For it is a considerable thing to know from what Center all Divine Worship and Services, that pertain to a Holy Convocation proceed. If only what may be learned from outward Precept, and from literal Knowledge (though taken from Scripture-Rules), it may prove but Formal and Dead: Imitated as a Picture that has Figure without Life; and so may be numbered among the Evil and Unfruitful and Dead works: Because if searched into, they issue not from a fresh Fountain-Spring that the Unction of Wisdom and Light is to give, by fresh and new Operations, as waited upon Day by Day. Therefore we are to try all Speakings, Prayings, and Offerings in Sanctuary and Church-Assemblings. For thus it is shown in the Glass of the Spirit: who is come to lay out all of this, that so we might not still lie under a Spiritual defraud, to raise the Living Temple of the Lord's Body from a dead Foundation; as if the Hand of the Almighty Power were altogether restrained, and shut up from these who are His earnest Seekers. No. Verily Stores and Materials, that have not yet been visibly seen, will be given forth to those, who are Elected to repair *Mount-Sion's* Tabernacle. They shall, as in the days of *Solomon*, have all in abundance from the Heavenly Country and Region, wherein all Precious things are contained, to Build and Beautify the Places of God's Residence.

[3F 11:6] And no need or use there will be made, of what looks old, and as a Flower is all withered, and decayed. For from the deep rooted stock of Life, whose Ground is purged, and from Heaven's Dew is moistened, may be expected a new shooting forth in Fresh Colors, Beauty and Glory as the old may pass away. This and this only will make out and give proof, that the quick Stock of the Immense fullness abides here. And the Holy Teacher has advised this: That a mighty Degree of Wisdom, Light, and Knowledge, surpassing what has yet been, will rise and increase upon the *Temple-Builders*. Therefore, for the bringing in of Stability upon this New Model and High-framed Piece, God will that it shall be brought forth without material Hands, not only to Men's but to Angel's Amazement. Nothing beyond this Wonder will be seen, for God to become the Tabernacle of those, who are fallen into Polluted Gross Forms, and that in a visible Body of Transparency.

[3F 11:7] This is yet to be known and manifested: and that which must magnify, and aggravate, and heighten the Glory of this Mystery, is that this Change will come upon some, while yet alive in the Mortal Body, to turn them out of a Fleshly Corruptibility, into a Vehicle made up in all perfect Spirituality, for subsistence with the Holy Trinity: who after this manner, the New *Jerusalem* that has been seen in Vision by *John*, and others since his Day, will now perfectly frame. By fashioning those dark and course Elementary Forms, into *Ethereal* Pure matter, that may abide with God, without shame, and contempt; because Transfigured as the Lord Christ was upon the Mount.

[3F 11:8] §. Now the Holy Revealer of secrets further shows *how* this will be brought to pass. Which will be only by awakening the *Properties of Eternal Nature*, that have been entombed and buried under Dying, Sinful Nature. But it may be objected: *What, and who, is sufficient to stir and raise up this Invincible Power, which pertains to Eternal Nature?* It is answered, that Deep calls upon Deep, to open the shut-up-Properties; which is the outcry of our own Eternal Spirits that are enclosed in a strange and dark Nature, and would break through it, and come to rest in its own Element. And if the Will-Spirit goes forth with all its force, power and might, it may be all-effectual to enter the Cabinet, where the Deity lay hid in *Simplified* Nature, that is without any mixture of Corruptibility.

[3F 11:9] For know God will never resist what is of His own, which is part of His Essential Being, that cannot longer bear to be disjoined from its Originality. Because as it is a Naked Spirit, having no clothing of power or might; while thus it abides distinct, it suffers much by reason of the want of those adjunctive Powers, concurring and incorporating with it; being set upon and encompassed with what proceeds from the old Natural Sin-properties, which are strong and potent, to cross and *thwart* the Enlightened part of the Inward Man. Therefore the Eternal Spirit in us, knowing upon what disadvantage it is, cannot cease to cry, and make out for more strength and aid to come in, to overcome he Mighty, that will give no liberty, but will still bind the will-spirit under oppression.

[3F 11:10] From this we are made to consider what may help, and loosen it from this Thralldom, and *Egyptian-Bondage*, that it is evermore subjected to, while it remains in Nature's depravity. And truly the long experience we have had of the Impotencies that do attend us, being still crushed and born down, as occasion is ministered, does abundantly convince us. For who can yet say that all of this World is overcome, and all rule and authority brought under the Kingdom of God? It is yet (Alas!) come so to none, as to bear the Scepter of Royal Sovereignty: If it were, the Fame thereof, we should describe not only by words; but deeds like lightning would run through to the utmost ends of the Earth. Far be it from us then, to rest in any of those ascending Degrees: But let us still make forward, and pitch our Eye upon the Seven Throne-Properties, that only can instate into the Great Dominion, that will be limited to no creaturely impositions.

[3F 11:11] §.*But is it so*, cries the Spirit, that has been so long bowed under and yoked unto decrep- it and vile corporeity, *that such a Door of Grace and Hope is set open, to pass out of the Old House of Nature, and our Eternal Spirits therefrom to break away to the Seven Spirits that stand before the Ancient of Days?* Oh, what then may we conclude will be done for us, who have been so long in old desolate Nature: all do lie in our own Eternal Spirits *untackling itself*, and breaking through Mortality to reach that Deep Center, where the Seven Properties of Eternal Nature lie hid. No other Trumpet, nor Cry, can awaken them, but the shrill, clear, and Pure Sounds and the Piercing Groanings of our own Spirits, that will fetch up the disappeared Model of Eternal Nature, after the manner, as the Lord raised up dead *Lazarus*: This the Holy Ghost has given in for Truth, and now leaves it to see who will be provoked to pursue these Rules.

### The Properties of Eternal Nature

[3F 11:12] §.*But now let us, in the Holy Spirit's Light and Knowledge, define and make out, What these Properties of Eternal Nature be?* That so we may understand their great Magnitude for defense, and their Fortitude to run the Soul up above, and out of the Serpent, and all of Old Nature's envy. Against which is required, that which is impregnable: For we must expect all the force and might, that Satan with all his Legions, can raise in his dark Principality. For it has not yet come to that touch and proof, so to throw him out, as he can find no more place, nor can see any of his Shape in the New Nature. Therefore the Trial will be, when all that in which the Sinful Properties were enkindled and fastened upon, shall strangely dissolve and melt away: and another Incorruptible Body, in the room thereof, where no Sin can live, be only made to appear for the Heavenly Properties to be Manifested in it. But first it will be requisite to denominate the opposite and evil Properties, that have stifled and kept down the good.



### The Seven Evil (Natural) Properties

[3F 11:13] §.The First that may be considered, is the *thick Darkness*, that covers and binds the Eye of the Mind.

[3F 11:14] §.Second is the Wrathful Spirit of *Bitterness*, that is easily and soon provoked.

[3F 11:15] §.Third is *Haughtiness* of Spirit, in priding and elevating itself, in what is confusion and shame.

[3F 11:16] §.Fourth is *Self-Love*: Engrossing all temporary riches, and honor, for its own propriety, both in relation to the external and Internal.

[3F 11:17] §.Fifth is *Unstableness*, mutability, and changeableness, apt to waiver and be unsteady for want of sound judgment.

[3F 11:18] §.Sixth is a *Rash Heady* incorrigible will, that runs out its force, strength, and might, into all mortal, vain, frivolous, and unadvisable things and essences.

[3F 11:19] §.Seventh is *All-Incredulity*, infidelity, and unbelieving, as to Eternal Things that are not consonant with reason, and captivated sense.

[3F 11:20] §.These Seven Properties are so deeply engrafted into Nature, that they are very hardly to be severed. They would live in Time and Eternity together. From these Heads go forth all that is called Sin, and the evil consequences of it. Which has banished us from God's Face and Habitation, and we are thereby turned into a coarse and mean piece of corporeity. So as to our Visible Image, we cannot be capable of so much as the inferior order of the Heavenly *Created Dignities*, as to have any conversation with them, much less to come to the plain and open sight of the Holy Trinity, as environed with Majesty and Glory.

[3F 11:21] While we are in these Natural Properties, we can never hope to enjoy the pure degree of Spiritual Society. And although, these Sinful Essences may through some light of illumination, be curbed and restrained from going forth into gross activity; yet if the Seed of the matter be there, it will be a cloud and a Partition-Vail, as was in the Figurative-Temple, between the Outward and Inward Court. This true Glass the Spirit has now put into our hands, that we might take a view, as we are found in the nature of these Vile Properties, though kept under check and control, yet the Root and Spawn of them remaining, is enough for that which is so perfect and immense in Holiness, to deny whose freedoms of access and Fellowship, till we shall put on those new-fashioned Robes, which Heaven's Inhabitants do wear. Which gives reverent boldness to come up to the *Sapphire*-Throne, where the Deity appears in amazing Glory, to fill and satisfy every such Translated *Enoch*, that has slipped out of the Gross Husk of stained Polluted Nature, into a new Creaturely Clarity.

[3F 11:22] For, verily, it is upon good Ground to be suspected, that we have seen ourselves in a flattering Glass, and have been thereby deceived. But Christ our Lord in reproof, did come very home to the *Laodiceans* in this matter, that though they had arrived high, and were so enriched, as they needed nothing more, till the Lord presented a pure Crystal-Glass, wherein they might see their own Nakedness, and great Deformity. So well persuaded, and also even satisfied, are the high grown Saints in this Age of their State of Grace, because got out and refined from the more gross and defiling Nature of Sin; not considering the Body, and springing Root of Evil still remains, that old Garment spotted with the Flesh. That nothing thereof might appear more, the perfect One has signified His Mind: that the old Bottle of Nature cannot retain the strongest Vigor of the Spirit's Wine, which

is *to be extracted to the Seventh Number*. And therefore does not spare to tell us, that the very Heavens, which we have drawn as a shadow upon the old Fabric of Nature, must depart away as a Scroll, that so the Deep Space of Eternity may open, and break in as a Sea, from which will branch forth the God-Essential Properties, which are thus distinguished:

### The Seven Excellent Properties

[3F 11:23] §.The First is the Morning-Day of Everlasting *Light*: upon which no shade of Night can mix, to eclipse the Temple-Glory, or any Mantle covering be upon the shining beauty of God's Face.

[3F 11:24] §.Second is all high and deep smiling *Love* from God's Countenance, amity without any frown: No cross line of discontent is here to be found, but what makes for friendship and peace.

[3F 11:25] §.Third *Wisdom*; which is of that high consistency, that comprehends all Divine Secrets, and all Eternal Acts, foreseeing the events, of whatever it devises, creates, and forms from this inspringing Light. This Wisdom quits all earthy craft with its sensible species, and rational operations. It is from a higher descent, and therefrom draws out deep counsels.

[3F 11:26] §.Fourth is *All Might*, nay, Strength of Almightyness: which when raised and put forth, the whole fame of all this Visible World must fall under, and be subjected to the stretched out Hand of this Power which will magnify itself in the omnipotency of a God's Sovereignty.

[3F 11:27] §.Fifth, clear and sound *Judgment*: which determines all things according to Truth and Righteousness, allowing no *false grains of partiality*, having the Single Eye, that sees all things nakedly, and passes sentence accordingly, and which can suffer no *fraud to infect it*.

[3F 11:28] §.Sixth *Liberality*, distributing answerably to that goodness and all sufficiency that is inherent in us, not giving grudgingly, as from a self-propriety, that seeks its own advantage and dignity, above its fellow-member or Branch, that is one with him in the Tree of Life.

[3F 11:29] §.Seventh and last Property is the *Meek* Property, that goes forth as in all softness as Oil, that runs out in all pleasant gentleness, that is forcible to dissolve and melt down the harsh, bitter, wrathful quality, and sublime and change it from its fierce spirit, into a sweet flexibleness.

[3F 11:30] §.Thus the Holy Ghost has defined His own most Excellent Properties, that we might see the perfection of Eternal Nature; §.Which may be restored to us mortals, as we are impulsed and made earnest here for it, and pursue it most vigorously: For if we can give credit to the Spirit of Truth, it will be well worth our labor, cost, and charge. For a Word or Voice did utter itself in me, *Oh! What arguments shall I produce, and where withal shall I persuade or incline the Heart, to give up all its old Earthly Properties, to Famine and Death, that they may cease from living at the Root?* For these must first be removed out of the way, before the Womb of Eternal Nature can bring these Seven Properties, that will figure out the express Glory of God bodily, as it was before the evil essences of Sin were awakened.

[3F 11:31] §.But objected is that: *This which is described, is a State all desirable for the Old Creature to be made new, after such a God-likeness as this is, but the way to the accomplishment is so severe and hard, as it carries an impossibility with it.* Answer, True, it is, says the Holy Ghost, to them who would save the life of their first Natural Birth, that consists in original Sin, who have such favor and love to it, as they cannot give up, nor divide from it, during their whole pilgrimage. Here has been the universal sticking: none have been able to go through *the Eye* of the Strait Birth, so as to

Seal to the Truth of this more excellent piece and figure, of Pure and Eternal Nature, with its powers and ornaments. Now then to the good willing minds, and hearing ear, that are all eager and fervent, for quitting the ignominious Nature, from which the evil properties put forth themselves, the Lord by His Spirit does greet such with these special Rules, to whom this light is risen:

[3F 11:32] §.*First*: Keep distance, and avoid all familiarity, with this strange introduced birth, that has flattered your Eternal Spirit into the greatest danger: and it lies in this, that the subtle spirit, through the lawful pretenses outward nature does make, comes to hold the free mind in captivity. But be at no agreement with that life that rises no higher than refined rationality. Do you still question, and mistrust all it would persuade you unto; for the Serpent's Treachery is verily got into it. Therefore be afraid to parley with your own Creaturely Being, as yet abiding after the fleshly birth.

[3F 11:33] §.*Second*: Abide in this variance and self-disownment. Be irreconcilable to that Nature, where the Sin is, that has occasioned all the estrangement from God, and be in a fixed enmity thereunto. For if after forsaking and disownment hereof, you fall in with it again, and do not maintain a perpetual hatred, both to Spirit and Nature, that bears rule from this outward world, the Birth of Eternal Nature will be forcibly retarded and kept back.

[3F 11:34] Therefore in the *Third place*; as advised you are to rend off here, so to join and cement with that Spirit of Love and Strength, that has declared these things to you, and that will help you then to stride over this *Mountain* of the Evil-Self, that so greatly has hindered the white Lily-Body of Eternal Nature, from blossoming in all these high rarified properties, that the Holly Spirit verifies may be reached unto, if you are careful to observe these rules. Surely the Just and Holy Yea and Amen is to be trusted, and confided in, for the wonderful renewing of this Pure and Sinless Nature, wherein we may have our fill of God essentially, from an endless Fountain of Life springing. *O Mighty Flood of Love, force our Spirits through all of the Old Nature, that figured may be the Holy Ghost, in these His working Properties, that are to be revealed in the Holy Ones of God.*

## Chapter 12

### May 19, 1678 On the Same Subject

[3F 12:1] §.This Word was spoken in me, saying, If you can fast with me from mortal things: then will be given you to eat that which will supply all of *Eternal Nature's* Properties, for which your Spirit is so perplexed to find them out. But for this, give place to the *Fire-Engine*, that may display its bright Rays for your conduct to that Secret Place; wherefrom they will be raised. Look steadily with Faith's Eye, till the Lordly Power out-stretches itself, a Vigorous Life to draw over that; which has lain under Death.

### May 20, 1678 The Deifying Properties of Eternal Nature

[3F 12:2] §.This Word came with a fiery Breath unto me. The Most High and Perfect Rule is set before you, but now it must so enkindle in you, as to beget and bring forth the *Deifying Properties*: Otherwise Light and Revelation has not its end answered. Having heard, and learned the way and model for the accomplishing this New Rarified Being, for the God-substantiality to move in, sure you are required to yield up, and comply with such weighty *impressions*, and driving powers, that stir from the Love and Life of Jesus; Which is *as a Water-Pool*, to wash all that is polluted and unclean, till no more blemish is be found.

[3F 12:3] §.Then soon after this, a Word sprung forth in me: Where think you the Mighty Engines of God's Power shall be planted, that are to make such a battery and destruction upon, what Sin has so corrupted, and all of God's Purity defaced? The cry was then in me by way of Answer: *The Lord knows who shall be hewed out for it. For the Number Seven are firm and strong Pillars for New Nature to stand upon.*

### May 21, 1678 The Sea of Eternal Nature

[3F 12:4] §.As I was waiting, I met with this Word from my Lord and God, who ceases not to give counsel unto us: to avoid the snares that every way do lie, while we are waiting in this corrupt air. The Word thus spake: O great Soul and Mind, beware of worldly soil: keep the Inward Part all refined; that God may open there His Great Name, and be uppermost in His own Nature, as a floating *Sea*, for light and discovery. In which you may know, as ye are known: for which draw nigh to that, which is ready to meet you in the Mind of Purity.

### May 29, 1678 The Angelical Womb

[3F 12:5] §.In the Morning-Watch my Spirit was called upon to hear and attend, for what was yet further to be known, in order to the deliverance from the Polluted State of the Natural Birth. I was shown how greatly it derogated from God's Creation, as *Adam* in his First Figure, and the Angels in

theirs. I saw the body and matter from which they did proceed, which was as a deep Eternal and Bottomless Space, all-Flaming Breath of Air, which was said to be the pure matter of Spiritual Bodies, and genetrix of perfect Nature. Upon which came this Word: *Except ye be born out of this Womb, ye cannot inherit the Kingdom of God.* Then it was cast up in my Mind, that the outward gross Image which we now have, was not the form that God Created. Neither did He will the propagation of generation in such a way, as the effects of the fallen and lapsed state of *Adam* did awaken.

[3F 12:6] And therefore these vile and corruptible bodies God does not own as His Make; But only that imprisoned Fire-spark of Eternity, that belongs to the Essential Being of His Divine Nature, as was known in spiritual matter and figure before the World was. For the sake of which, God became manifested in flesh, that He might change it into spiritual matter, form, and power, from the Inward Element, as the Fleshly is from the Outward; And so produce the true Native Birth again, as was before the Sin, and Fleshly Birth was known. This is verily the Great Redemption that the Lord Christ will bring to pass: as He is Born Again in Spirit, under the Veil of the Fleshly Form. And therefore the *Word of Life*, that can pierce through flesh and bones, and ask no leave to come in and go out, will be the Mighty Operator hereof: And first gives Light and Knowledge into these Truths, that our Spirits might know, this is not the Body of its Originality; but a vain show, or Shadowy Image, that is to be put off. That so a perfect figure may naturally and durably act God, to all agreeableness of Spiritual Mindedness.

**June 1, 1678**

### **The Fire-Seed: This Vision was in the Night**

[3F 12:7] §. There opened a Gate, wherein I did see the perfect growth and flourishing state of all plants, in various appearances and colors, and myself and another person walking near it, pressing to go in, but were put by, saying: The Spirit has not done Sowing what is still more to spring up in this Hidden Region. Then was that Word ministered: *The Sower and the Reaper shall surely rejoice together in God's Harvest-Day.* Then did I see somewhat scattered up and down, like Fire-Sparks, and buried in the Ground. By which I understood, the Spirit had yet His own Sowing Time, which should produce powers infinite and various, answerable to the Fire-Seed sown.

**June 2, 1678**

### **Interpretation of the Vision**

[3F 12:8] §. The former Vision opened to me again, concerning the Fire-Sparks, that appeared to be in a Hand, that scattered them in a Ground, that was as clear as the Air. The Number was the same as those Stars mentioned in the *Revelations*. But these after a while, all together united in one Body, into a Figurative Body, all Fire-like; but of a pale color like lightning, but very glorious. Then this Word came with it: *These which you have seen, are the unmixed Essences of the Deity, which coagulating with the matter of the Pure Element, as Seed sown in its own proper ground, will bring forth a Body of its own kind, in Figure and Spirit, as this is consubstantiated into the very Body of God.* This is the right Grain of the Spirit, which in no ground has ever yet come up for manifestation. But the Lord is refining and making some ready for it, as they shall be found yieldable to the Spirit the Sower.

[For the further Interpretation of this Vision, see what was afterwards revealed upon the 14th Day of this very Month.]

**June 4, 1678**  
**The Overthrow of the Kingdom of**  
**the BEAST**

[3F 12:9] §.In the morning the Word sounded in me, saying: The Lamb of God, who must restore the Creation, is now putting on the Horn of His Power, wherewith He will push down that long fixed Seat of the *Beast*: Which yet for a little space will make Great War. And all Nations will break in, as a Sea, to uphold and strengthen that, which this Mountain-Stone will suddenly, as a Mill-Stone fall upon; Whose Head-Power is to be crushed, first in them who are to join with the Lamb, that they may go forth (as Captains of the Lord's Host), in Spiritual Armor, with Jesus their Head, and overturn the Kingdom of the *Beast*: That shall give place to Him, who is called the *Word of God*, that makes war in righteousness. Be wise, and know, this is an Acceptable Season to provide against the Cloud, which rises from the troubled *Sea*.

**June 6, 1678**  
**The Leopard on the Throne**

[3F 12:10] §.In the night, my mind was deeply considering and making observation of the Falling and Rising Powers. In what heights of Spiritual Raptures of Love and Joy, sometimes run up to, and then down into the Cloud of Sense; Which both affects, and afflicts, and thereby humbles that, which would rather be in a continued exaltation of Spirit, in super-eminent communion with God. But I was very busy to inquire out, why there could not be an holding out in such a posture of spirituality, as to be delivered from that part, that is so readily touched, and drawn down. Whereupon I had a very suitable prospect from the High Sphere opened unto me, as thus: A Stately Chair was presented, and a *Leopard* which was spotted got up thereupon, and held a Rod in both his fore-feet, which stood upright, and struck at all Beasts that would not couch to him, and fawn and lie down at his feet. Then came a *Fire* that formed itself into the Figure of a Man, and threw the Beast down from his Seat, where he lay as dead. But after a while he roused up like a Lion, and got up again into his principality, and swayed his Rod every way, to keep and maintain his place. But suddenly, out of a Cloud came the same Glorious Appearance, and by a *Fiery* Stream consumed both the Leopard and his throne, so that nothing more was seen of him. This Vision has its weighty significations, as we are guided in the Spirit of Interpretation.

**June 8, 1678**  
**The Seat of the Beast became the Throne**  
**of the LAMB**

[3F 12:11] §.This Morning I was deeply encircled and covered over, as with a Fiery Cloud in the Center of my Heart, out of which a Voice did sound: Here is Wisdom's Root: Light and Revelation is her Offspring. Therefore be not thoughtful to say: *How shall that, which is the Seat of the Beast, become the Throne of the Lamb, to Reign evermore?* Know that the Power will be also antecedent, to accomplish what is seen in the Glass of the Spirit. God's all sufficiency giving out, as occasion requires. For the Holy Spirit (that is Christ's Agent), will renew and fetch in more force, as batteries and assaults are made; For the Omnipotent King is coming to Reign over all; and neither flesh, Beast, nor Dragon shall detain him.

[3F 12:12] §.This day at our meeting ,the Breath of the Power did mightily stir, and there was a transient appearance of a Circle-Cloud, in which a Flame, and a White Mist went up from it, which

was confirmed to be the Acceptable Incense, which through the Spirit's intercession did open: Oh, it is good to pray, as the Spirit inspires, and to ascend in the Spirit's own Kindled Flame, and to watch the same at every Spring-tide of Power opening.

**June 9, 1678**  
**The Stronghold of Faith\***

[3F 12:13] §.Much counsel from the Holy One is renewed, morning by morning, as the mind is inverted into God. But this Word came in special: *Return*, see that you abide in the stronghold of *Faith*; For if therefrom you are found, troubles will surround, and tormenting cares will abound: but all quietness and joy is found in *Believing* in that Name that the Spirit is sowing in us, but yet in weakness; but it will have its Rising Power, as Faith grows mighty in you.

**June 14, 1678**  
**God Sows Himself in Man**

[3F 12:14] §.The interpretation of the Vision of the Enclosed Place, where the full grown plants appeared, of all various kinds, was revealed for a similitude, to show forth the renovation of the face of *Paradise*, in a far more excellent degree, as the New Creation-Glory. The sowing time is here, while abiding in a Terrestrial Body; but the springing up will appear in another principle; into which you cannot pass, till the first and latter crop of the Spirit be brought to perfection. There are divers Seasons of Sowing, as the Winter, and Spring, and Summer. And the Seed and Grain is as various, answerable to the degrees and climate, where this Seed is cast. So it must be considered, as to what the Spirit in us, *first* scatters in the Winter Season into the Heart of our Earth, as it is prepared.

[3F 12:15] Therefore our Age also may be compared to the round circle of a year. The Summer bringing all of the Winter sowing to its perfect Ripeness, as the ground is made clear and solid. For there is that foregoing labor and care taken, to make that *first* fit, by the sharp plough of conviction, that breaks open into a meek mollification of heart, that so the Seed of *Light* sown, may abide and endure the ripening Winter of Death. Whose blackness of darkness is such, that it is oftentimes a face of covering upon it: and in some unsound Ground becomes extinguished, or so sunk down into its own Aether, as no more to rise. Which is dreadful, wherever it so happens: which is too frequently known, but we have no more to say of such. But we are to mind how the Spirit has sown His Light in us, and how it springs up in the deep of our minds: So as no blasting winds, nor cold cloudy nights, nor the storm from the troubled Sea of this roaring Principle (that would cast up Mountains of Earth, to obscure this Light of Life), can nip or kill the same. Which if it be preserved through all Storms, it makes ready for another Substantial Grain to be dispersed, for the higher rarefication of that One Entire Body, that is to be brought forth from the various Springing Powers.

[3F 12:16] The *Second* sowing is the thin subtle Air, that is as a clear *White Mist*, that passes through the Ground, and clarifies it, and alters the course roughness of it, and wonderfully sifts it, so as its harsh quality becomes soft, sweet, and gentle.

[3F 12:17] For the *Third* and most principal matter, whereof the Figurative Body is made up, for the Holy Trinity to dwell in: Is *Celestial-Fire* that is sown within the Inward Man by the Holy Spirit. This Celestial-Fire is of a due temperature; it is as a clear, pleasant Coagulating Heat, not painful or scorching, as are the nature of other Fires. For whatever is simple and pure may pass through, and also subsist in it: But indeed it will endure no defiled matter to mingle with it.

[3F 12:18] In the *Fourth* place sown is the *Water*, whose nature is of such a healing, piercing body, as the Liquor of Gold is presented to be in this world, which is but dross in comparison of this. Nay, those Rivers of Gold mentioned in the First *Paradise* must not equal it. Therefore it has the title in Scripture, *The Healing Water*, or that which produces the Everlasting Life. This Water has no disharmony with the Essence of Fire: But they operate and concur together, for the composition of a transparent Celestial-Body, which is to be sown under the Veil of our Fleshly Body. If it may but get over the Winter-Season, then what is sown of this weighty and rich kind, will be so nourished and refreshed from its own climate, as to grow up into a united Body of clarity, power, and strength. So that to speak plainly, and without a similitude: *God saw Himself in us*, which was specified in the Vision by the Seven Sparks that were scattered by a Hand, upon a Ground, that was clear as the Element.

### The Scriptural Authority

[3F 12:19] *But oh*, it may be cried: *This is a Strange Doctrine. Who can receive it, or believe?* It is enough, that the Seeds of Grace are sown, as Love, Faith, Hope, Meekness, and those many more Fruits of the Spirit that are mentioned in the Writings of the Apostles, saith the Objector. But you must aspire to the very essential matter, from which all this branches forth. Yea, sure we have our Authority for it, and not only by our own private interpretation, of particular revelation, which might be largely insisted upon, if permitted, it was to declare all we have received. But take that of *John 17*, and the exposition given (vs. 22), where our Lord prays (and never prays amiss) to ask for that, which *will not* by His Father's Free Given Gift, ever be brought to pass. Speaking here of one Essential *Oneness*, the Words are, *that they may be one* (or perfectly one) *as Christ the Lord was in God the Father*. If so that Christ's Prayer takes effect, then we may expect *Consubstantiation* with the God-Head, if we are enrolled in Christ's Discipleship, on whom the Holy Ghost is to be poured forth in a more fixed degree (or rather sown more intrinsically and more inherently) than in the Former Day.

[3F 12:20] For thus it was with our Lord and Precedent: the God-Head grew up with Him, as He waxed strong in Spirit, mighty in Power, to act and to do those marvelous works in the world, which gave the witness of God, manifesting Himself in Visible Corporeity. Which power and presence was still to be continued, in the Line of a succeeding Generation, through the Incarnation of Jesus in Spirit: who said, *Lo I am with you to the end of the world*; Though I disappear and cease from being known to you anymore in this Assumed Figure, yet know I will be *in you*, as the Father was *in me*: Nay, we will come unitedly, and make our abode, that you may be all empowered with that Ghostly Spirit, which proceeds *from the Father and me*, wherein will be your sufficiency to act, and work by the self-same united strength.

[3F 12:21] Now this Prophetical Prayer of our Lord was *in part* fulfilled after His Ascension, in pouring out the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles: But the more substantial part of it is yet to be made good. For Christ did not appropriate this wonderful conjunction only to the Discipleship in that Present Age, but it runs more largely and unconfinedly, to all whom the Father had given Him, that might believe hereafter through their Word, that they might come to know this Perfect *Oneness*, and to be further advanced, as to be *Glorified with the Glory*, which the Lord Himself was *Glorified with, before the world was*. This is a considerable thing to be looked into indeed. For us poor mortals, who are now in such an ignominious appearance, it may be well worth our inquiry to find out, what part and portion we have in it. For which the Spirit has made search already, and is come to give knowledge of our true and Eternal Consistency in the pure Essence of *Spirit*; Which is now struggling in this Vile Body to come forth in pure Liberty, and to show itself according to what was fore-ordained from before all worlds.



[3F 12:22] And how is this to be, but by the Renewed Birth of Jesus, springing from that hidden Virgin Nature, that is to redeem, and abolish not only in the flesh, the enmity of that Law of Sin, which works in the Earthly Members: But also in the Dispensation of the Fullness of Time, make up of twain *One* entire Body, as at the beginning, in such a Glorified Figure, as Christ the Lord speaks He had with the Father, before anything was known of *Adam's* Apostasy: Nay, before his more Angelical Image was formed. Our expectation runs higher, than the formation in *Paradise*. Therefore the matter of our Image, that we are to be formed into, must be of Another Degree, more fine, subtle, and ethereal; As *John* did see, when he described our Lord Jesus in that clarity as is thus expressed: *His countenance as the Sun shining in its strength, and His Eyes as Flames of Fire.*

[3F 12:23] Now Christ's Spirit has assumed His True and *Eternal* Body, as the fullness of that Godhead that fills all in all: And so will dispersively sow the same Pure and Essential matter, for the production of such like Spirit and Body, in those who have Faith herein, and are able to eat this *Word* down, that was made *Flesh*. For that is the Essential Root, from which the Life will have its Quickening Source, to get a Body all compact, and agreeable to our Lord: Whom now we cease to know anymore after a *Fleshly* Form. And we are therefore instructed, as *Jacob* was, to set the speckled Rods before the Flock, that so they might conceive ring-streaked, and bear the express mark thereof. So now upon this Pure conception out of the Eternal Essence, that is beforehand with us (as the last and Principal Birth), we therefore are to fix the Eye of our Minds: Even upon the Risen and Glorified Jesus, that from that pure Matter and Nature may spring a Spirit and Body out of this Dry Husk, like unto his. *O how worthy and blessed should we be, no more to know ourselves in this shade of vile Flesh, but all in Christ His pure risen Body; which is our Glory that we are in hope to attain.*

## Chapter 13

**June 23, 1678**

### **Separate the Precious from the Vile: or, the Altar-Fire**

[3F 13:1] §.The cry of my soul was this, in the day of my being distressed: Oh, why is my Pain perpetual, and my wound incurable? Is there no healing for me? And in these exigences, where is the force of Omnipotency, that it may be raised and exerted forth, to bring down the Beast that insults in His Throne Power, having all from the great Prince of Darkness, to scourge and afflict withal? Oh God, will you be as a Stranger to me, and not know me in this way, that is Hedged up upon me, where I see no escape out? Will you leave me to languish, for want of your Arm of Strength going forth? Oh! Be not now to me, as the Waters that fail.

[3F 13:2] §.After my complaint in the bitterness of my soul, this Word was applied to me: *Be steady and unmovable in your trust. Give no place to fear or doubt, and you shall bring to pass the whole desire of your heart in Jehovah's Strength: Yea, you shall return to the Secret of my Pavilion, and stand before Me your God, who has chosen you. Therefore, separate the precious from the vile; then you may be my Mouth, out of which the Pure Word of Life may go out, to the joy and rejoicing of them, whose Food it shall be. Now keep up, and let not the Waters of Sense sink you down: For nothing is so killing to the Plant of renown, whose Root is from the inward Ground.* Then was shown me the pure Altar Fire, that would be only the remedy to dry up the inundation of these Senses that had made all commotion and disorder in me. But (oh!) this Burning Love, and Springing Faith, have dispersed those Legions, that would keep me in these fetters.

**June 24, 1678**

### **The Heave-Offering\***

[3F 13:3] §.This Word came upon some occasion in which my mind was exercised: Go forth, and fear no reproach. Let your Heave-Offering be the smoking Incense of Faith: That will turn the stream of all evil indeed. This is the time wherein God's Salvation will appear. His Redeeming Power is very near. Be therefore watchful, and let not the Cords of Faith slack: For hereby only can you tread down the Terrible One, who is risen out of the Sea, as a troubler to snatch away the Secret Prize.

**June 25, 1678**

### **The Anchor of Hope\***

[3F 13:4] §.Then again this Word came: Look neither this way, nor that. From the High and Lofty One, turn not away your Eye; for in very deed no relief can come, but from the working power of the God-Head. Lay there your Anchor of Hope steadfast, and sure: And you shall be made as a Brazen Wall, all the pushing horns to retard.

**June 28, 1678**  
**God Spares Not Whom He Loves**

[3F 13:5] §. This night I was exceeding restless, and my sleep departed from me, upon considering that Holy Innocent Nature of the Lamb of God, that still must suffer in us, under the Reign of the Beast. Who would still keep our spirits in a Law and Sinful Servitude, and would terrify us with his scourging *Rod*. In the sense of which I arose, and spent much of the night in prayer, pleading mightily with God, spreading the whole case of our Spirits before Him, as in relation to the more weighty and principal work, that we as Passive Instruments might act in the Spirit's Hand.

[3F 13:6] But when we hoped here, to be made manifest, according to those great discoveries, and Love-drawings, and impulsive powers moving, and were willing to go forward to the perfecting this Great Thing made known, by the Spirit of Revelation to us: Behold now Satan, is as it were, let loose to winnow, sift, and try. And the Lord has shown me it must be thus necessarily. We must first pass through the Kingdom of Tribulation and Patience: and must thereby stop the Mouth of the Grand Adversary, that is most ready to accuse God of Partiality, and Love's Indulgency; to excuse and wink at that in us, which He Condemns in others, who are in the same relapse. Therefore the Word of Life thus signified unto me, that it does thus become us to pass through all sorts and degrees of Sufferings. That God may say, though He has loved us, yet He has not spared us, no more than Him, who was the First Begotten from the Dead. So it was affirmed that this was God's Method and Way, to pass through the Thorny Cross with our Jesus.

[3F 13:7] But this Word of Comfort did come thereupon: That from that *lifted up* we should in triumphant Faith be immediately Translated to walk upon the Glassy-Sea. Which none can ever set foot upon, but such who have come through all Conquering Tribulations, and have dyed their Garments in the Blood of the Lamb. Oh, this is the sure way: Therefore to bear the Marks of these Dyings, will be an assured Token of our reigning Life that shall finish the whole tragedy of the present Afflictions. Under which we shall not faint. For the Lord, the LORD, has said, *He will sustain with Living Bread, and Refreshing Springs, and uphold under all with the strong Arm of His Might*. All that is required of us is that we hold fast, and keep His charge, and make Him our shelter, and safe dwelling Rock, there to abide forever.

**July 1, 1678**  
**The Eternal Canaan\***

[3F 13:8] §. This Word came fresh in the hour of fear and adversity, saying: Be strong, and go yet forth in the Lord's might, and work: for the Lord's Spirit is with you, as in the Day when He delivered out of *Egypt*. Consider that the Foundation of the Temple is laid: which is God and the Lamb, which will shake, and burn the First Heaven and Earth away. Till then God in Pure Nature, cannot show His Mighty reign and hereby distinguish, who are his elected Train: who are to be lifted up from this Earth, in this new framed Temple-Body. Which will not be brought forth, by Man's Wisdom, Strength, or Creaturely Might, but from that unknown Oily Breath, that does knit together yet again the dispersed Element, in which is no Corruption to diminish from the Deity: As in a Figurative Body; all is agreeable to what is within the borders of the Eternal *Canaan*. The Inhabitants of which, will be the Glory and Strength of it. To which the gathering of all Nations, as to their Princedom, and to Christ their Head, will be: where nothing more of Servitude is to be known.

**July 3, 1678**  
**The Tempestuous Voyage: or, The Treasure.**

[3F 13:9] §.Much of this night I spent in many tossings and turmoils of my mind, laboring to rise higher than the Low Sphere of sensible things, which now as a Cart with Sheaves, laid heavy to press the Life of Faith down; Which heaved up to cast off all that weight, which did still strive against that Flowing Steam; expostulating with my God: Why so long proved and vexed with dead and frightful Ghosts, that I hoped had been so buried, as never to have rose again. For such are all self-reasonings, which have been so often renounced by a sublimated mind, who should ever move in Faith's Sphere, into which we have been instructed. But hereby I was made to know, that the Spirit of Faith was not grown so high, as to overturn the Seat of the Beast, that nothing more of his Name might remain, for to afflict or exchange in the Rudimental World, which lies in all Evil.

[3F 13:10] This was the matter of my contemplation, attended with this Word of consolation, saying: *Faint not at the Day of the Lord's Rebuke, who is first come to search and try the utmost ends of your Earth, where the Grain of Sense lies most deep, which cannot yield to Death.* Which occasions this continued Agony, till the conquest be obtained, by the force and powers of those Three Worthies, who are not afraid to face and encounter this whole world: Which was the Strength I was directed to fly to, Father, Son, and Spirit, who will go forth in One Entire Body, conquering and to conquer, as we can hold fast, and center in this Eternal Unity; Which must tread down the strength of all raging Enemies. For the Just One has forewarned and foretold, a Time of Shaking, and an Hour of Temptation would come, where we might be scattered, as in a Cloudy Night, from the sight of our *Immanuel's* tent. Upon which this Word was mightily pressed upon me: *Be sure, that in stress of Wind and Weather, you keep upon the Broad Ocean,* where Faith's Anchor may deeply fix, spreading out the Hands of the Spirit, swimming to save that Choice Life, that is brought in perils of those Senses, that clasp about, to plunge it into the Stifling Mud of the Earthly Sensibility, where a thicket of unsavory Weeds aptly spring.

[3F 13:11] §.From which the Word came to me: Escape, escape, for the tender Birth-Life-sake from the Earthly Matter, which will endanger the very Head and Fountain-Spring, which Nature is to clarify, and with its deep Die to immortalize. Therefore I was commanded to sacrifice all of that Rude Matter, which would stop the swift and mighty Sail of that Sacred Vessel, which is primarily laden with Faith's Treasury; to go forth in the weighty sentences, which may turn all Words into Essential Powers. This is Wisdom's Rich Merchandize, the Golden Bait of which, we have been so long nibbling at: but could never take that Fish, in whose Mouth the Silver piece is to be found, which at pleasure can multiply unto the 1,000 Number, and so incorporate in One; as to know how to deal with all strong Nations, that make War to keep off the Mighty Reign of Jesus, in that which is to be His New *Jerusalem* Bride.

[3F 13:12] For such is now the violent pursuit and implacable fury, that is set forth to over-cloud this Rising-Sun, that is to appear in the glory, strength, and majesty, of a present Kingdom. Which we see has been hereby greatly withstood, but the most High begins to stir, and call forth the Valiant in Spirit, not only to oppose, and withstand this Grand Adversary with all his Legions, but to crush his visible Head-Power, who has swayed over the whole Earth. And how is this to be? Not by sound or word only, that reveals and gives a Foundation-Hope of Christ's Kingdom: But by exerting and drawing out, and letting fly the Ghostly Breath of Life, that so the precious Spikenard may go out, as the marrow, strength, and life, from the fullness of the God-Head, to those who have incorporated with Christ and His Spirit, of which we are now partakers. Therefore, no doubt but marvelous things

may be wrought, if we know the manner and method of its dispersive power, how to drive it out from its own Inward Contact and Center, into which it retires.

[3F 13:13] §.Object. *But, oh, how is it concealed from all knowledge? A Treasure that cannot be come at: It is hid from all living in corporeal sense. Who, or what, then is able to search this Golden Vein out, that may be the blessings of Generations?*

[3F 13:14] §.In Answer to this, according to the revealing Word it was shown me: That liberty to renew *Eternal Nature*, and thereby to recover the Ancient Patrimony, that belongs to the Eternal Spirit, was now granted, by virtue of God manifested in Flesh: and therefore the Promise is to the *Seed of God*: Who are made subject in a human form of weakness, under carnal rudiments, in bondage to sin and corruptible things. Now it is to be considered where the Redemption out of all this must come. It is an infallible Truth, which is now by the Spirit made known, that the Root and Stem of Salvation rises from within us, though as yet unserviceable to us. That Ransoming Blood is a Fountain that opens itself, to give a new existence of Life, according to the *Seven Spirits* that go forth in their several Properties, till they have finished the whole Mystery of the New Creation, and have wrought out the Captive Exile out of all its hard servitude, who has so long served in fear, anguish, and sorrow.

[3F 13:15] The Purchase-Penny, the Acceptable Prize, that will do it most effectually, lies very near, within the borders of *Immanuel's Land: God with us*. Therefore it was said by the Word of the Lord, Faint not under the present chastisement. For the strength of Almightyness will be searched out of your own Spiritual Womb. A Comforter and Deliverer shall arise. Therefore be not perplexed or over charged, at what has happened to trouble and disquiet. For the Fruit of all these pursuing Evils, shall but hasten the Birth of that, which will restore the Kingdom and Dominion. Therefore keep up your hopes here, and look but one way, even to that Stone and Foundation Rock that will divide the Sea for you. Fall not in with the Heathen Idols: But to your own Fountain-Power retire. In every case of distress and strait, strongly knock, and steady in Faith to strike the Rock; from out of which all and every supply may come. And you will know, here alone lies your true Medicinal cure, that will all of Sin's evil out-wear.

### July 9, 1678 The Bloody Path

[3F 13:16] §.I was this Day much upon the consideration of the Unknown Path, which the Lord has called me out to follow, which is so cross and averse to the Life of Flesh, that nothing of that Birth is able to walk therein. Though many through the light of conviction have made an entrance, and so have gone forward, till tribulations and sufferings, with all reproach and contempt have met them, and then they turned away, as frightened at the appearance of those dismal things; So that now it was set before me, by way of a Figurative Vision, lest by any means we should be turned aside out of this strait Path, as others have been, who were in holy strife for the Prize.

### The Bridegroom's Friend

[3F 13:17] The Vision was this: There appeared to me many dead Carcasses, that lay in that way which we were to pass: and also many more that were wounded and hurt, as having met with some ravenous Beasts. This was the first part of the way that was so dreadful. But there was one that spake aloud: *Fear not, but go forward. The pleasant way is yet behind. You are not without your Angel-Guard*. Now charge was given that we must stride over these Dead Bodies, and not touch them; and

hold no parley with the wounded: but strait pass away, in assured hope, we should meet with him, who is our Bridegroom's Friend, who will receive us with joy, after we have gone through this *Bloody Way*. Then appeared a Troop, who were all of comely Stature, upon whom were no wound or flaw. These were those who were sent from the Lamb: who all ministering Spirits has at command, to fetch home His Traveling Ones, to their own Peaceable Land.

**July 10, 1678**  
**The Girdle of Unity**

[3F 13:18] §. There was this morning framed to my inward sight, a Wreathed Line of Gold, and there were Knots curiously wrought at the middle, and each end of the line, that was shown to me: but from where it came, I saw not. But suddenly there were some that looked at it with a troubled countenance, and would have laid hands upon it, conspiring to have loosed the Knots. But it was said, No unsacred hands shall these touch, or can them ever unloose. For it is the Girdle of the Trinity, that will gird up the Joints of the Broken, and Sorrowful in Spirit, whose strength alone is found in this *Girdle of Unity*, clasped on by the Buckle of Faith, which is of great attraction. And that which was very observable, there was no end or beginning of the Golden Knots for to loosen them, so interwoven, as nothing can parallel it. Oh, the unseen way of God's method, to keep up the weak and feeble Lambs, that are to be brought into His own Eternal Fold.

## Chapter 14

July 19, 1678

### The Opening of the Vision Received July 9th

[3F 14:1] §.Now as concerning those Dead Bodies, which lay in the way which I was to pass through, it was by the Spirit of Truth given me to understand, that it did signify and figure out these Last Ages, since Christ's time, those who are passing through the tempting Wilderness to *Mount-Sion*, under the conduct of the Spirit. Who give Rules and daily Manuductions for journeying on, as God did visibly by *Moses*, give Laws and Ordinances to the Church in the Wilderness. Now as *Moses* had immediate access, and received all from God's Mouth, so the Spirit takes from *Christ*, and delivers the Whole Counsel of God the Father. Who hides nothing from the Spirit of Jesus, but admits to search as deep as it will, entering and finding out the most Hidden Ground, and cause of all creatures, and things existing *in* and *out* of Nature.

[3F 14:2] But as *Moses* had to do with a perverse and doubtful Generation, doubting, and questioning God's Love, Truth, and Faithfulness, nay, His All-Sufficiency, though daily proofs thereof were manifested: So in these Ages, since Christ's coming in the Flesh, there has been infused, and shed in of His Spirit, to give Light and Wisdom, and the express Rule of Faith to walk by: Yet what repugnance, and crossness, and mutiny has the Spirit met withal, refusing to obey, and yield to the New Creation-Laws. So that it is no marvel, that there has been such a dying short of the Promised Liberty, and Kingly Dominion. The Spirit no doubt has been provoked and grieved through Unbelief, and could not bring through into the *Rest*, which is spoken of, where no care or thoughtfulness need be for anything. For the good of the Whole Land, that never was under the Curse, lies before, and is ready to be possessed by such, who are steady and mighty in Faith.

[3F 14:3] But where is such Faith to be found, as can clear off every doubt, and not stagger at any seeming impossibility: Such a Spirit as *Joshua* had, who cried *Fear not, for we shall be able to encounter and overcome all the Nations which strive against us*. He knew the Arm of Strength, which he rested on, would make all to fly before them. Even to this end the dead Carcasses were set before me, as was certified to stagger our Faith, and to stop the Chariot of Hope. For look and see how all these were running to enter into the New State, where all care and labor are to cease, but they were cut off before they could reach the Sabbath Jubilee, in this known Sphere, where only Mortal Robes have been worn. Who can expect to exceed this degree? Some were shown to me to be those which pressed hard for the *Resurrection-Mark*, and were also strong in Faith; yet did not see *Enoch's* Translation; but let their Visible Bodies fall in Suffering and Martyrdom, in common with other mortals.

[3F 14:4] §.All which considered, it was objected in me: *How, or what was it, that should induce us to believe, to have such an expectation as to put off this Dead Body more Honorably, and Triumphantly: which must be by clothing it upon with Christ's Risen Body, which has been yet scarce known in any Age?* What manner of Faith will carry us through to this?

[3F 14:5] §.Answer hereunto was given in by this Word: It is *long striding* Faith that leaps over all Dead Carcasses, which have come short of Christ's immediate Kingdom, which is brought into this

world by Transmuting Powers, exerted from a Life-Quickening Breath, that includes Faith of all kinds and sorts: Which must bear heights, and depths, breadths, and lengths, in its going forth with all impregnable force, as a Bow of Steel, which cannot be broken. Now it was verified by the Spirit from this Vision, that there is a Faith that remains yet to be revealed, that is to exceed all those degrees that yet have been arrived to. Though of a truth, great and mighty things have been wrought and done by the Worthies, who have been of great renown for Faith, as the Scripture plentifully testifies of. And verily no such acts of believing have been known, by these last Ages.

[3F 14:6] Therefore it may be well objected, we are a great way off from these higher working powers. For if impartial judgment be given, there is a great abatement in the very highest of Saints now, to what was before and after Christ's time. For it [Faith] is hardly to be found after such a way of working, either Invisible in the Mystery, or Visible in doing Signs or Wonders. Oh, how may it be bewailed, that this Precious Grain is so lost out of the Earth; and in the more eminent also, who do dispose themselves for God, yet in them it is deeply sunk down. The great heap of Senses lies upon it, as a mountain, to keep them from working the Mighty Works of God, in sending out the pure Acts of Faith. But what is to be done to find and fetch up this Essential Omnipotence, that has been so long withdrawn? There was never more need, since the Creation than now, for its rising: even to bring forth Salvation, to save us out of a self-destroying World. Oh! Where and with whom shall this dram of Faith first be found, which will give the most certain sound of the All-Powerful Gospel-Spirit?

### Faith's Magia-Wheel

[3F 14:7] §. While I was lamenting being shut-up and bound under the Laws and Rudiments of this Outward Creation, for want of this All-Powerful Faith, that will set free from all Bondage, a Vision of this came before me, as thus: A pure Circle did work out itself, rising from out of a thick darkness. It was streaked with Transparent Colors, and was in the form of a Wheel: And through great Combat with a Dark Cloud, it was lifted up, and moved with great swiftnes, and went over all things, and touched nothing; yet leveled rocks and mountains, and strong grown Trees fell, where it moved over them. This was opened to be the *Faith-Magia-Wheel*: which will break out, though it has long been kept down in Nature's Cloudy Body. It will make a quick work, when once it can throw off this Weighty Earth. It then can make no stay, till it has finished its Race, in leveling and bringing down those strong rooted Cedars of the Senses and Craggy Rocks of strong Reason, that have kept off the righteousness of Faith's Kingdom: Which could not come into Manifestation, till they were brought low by this rising Wheel, that must mount over all, and will not touch the *Dead*.

[3F 14:8] Though there has been a Worthy Generation, that did not reach to this full Unity of Faith to come, but died Martyrs in the process of this Faith, yet we, who are reserved to see the greater things, which belong to this Last Age, must not stumble at them, who may lie as Dead in our way, and judge it impossible to pass beyond their bounds. For there is a Faith that the Just and Perfect are to live by and wholly upon: Which will bring in all kinds of supplies, when the Magia-Wheel works high. Therefore the advice of the Spirit is: That we should apply ourselves fully to this Study, that through the Mystery taught us, we may be well-versed in this Heavenly Magia to help, save, and succor in this Distressed Age, where all sorts of cruelty and oppression are exercised.

[3F 14:9] What will be more acceptable than to know how to exert forth all precious Redeeming Faith, to save ourselves and others from the Wolfish Spirit that is now so great in power? What else can bear down this Beast whose Kingdom is made so strong, but the rising Kingdom of Faith that



will overrun and crush the Head-strength of their vile Kingdom. Oh, the Lord our King invites to come to possess the Riches, Might, and Power of *Faith's Kingdom*: and that immediately.

**July 20, 1678**  
**The Patience of Faith**

[3F 14:10] §. This Word came to me: Be not over hasty, so long as Faith's Evidence is with you. You have a faithful Steward that is day by day stirring up the more choice and excellent substance, which is laid up during the Time and Season which is necessary for Probation. But know after this purifying Season, it will be given in with great increase, that so you may rejoice, and say, the Lord is wise and kind, though He keeps for a time the Life's Revenue in His own hand.

**July 21, 1678**  
**Earth to Earth**

[3F 14:11] §. Going to my rest somewhat troubled, that anything of a worldly concern should interrupt me in that Spiritual Employ and Calling, that now I had so delightfully betaken myself unto; I met with this in the night: I saw myself imposed upon to carry a Heavy Bag, the stuff that was in it, seemed to be Lime. I went with it, till I was full weary, and coming to a place which was as a Pit, that I must pass down into, and up again with my burden, at which I was much disturbed, and stooping to go down. There suddenly appeared Two Persons, having great pity towards me, saying: Come, we will bear off this burden for you. So they took it from me and threw it into the Pit, saying, *Let the Earth go to the Earth, but come after us to the Land where you shall know the Peaceable Rest*. So greatly eminent was my Deliverer, only at the joy of which, I came out of the Vision.

[3F 14:12] Then I considered the thing, and it was shown me that it came for support, and to relieve under the present weight of care and concern that was thrown upon me. For the Word said, *Fear not; out of this Horrible Pit you shall be delivered also*. For my great strife lay here: I knew not how to let in any gross thing into the Mind of my Spirit, which I had assigned over to God for Spiritual replenishments: which could have no agreement with the Earthly stuff. For truly I found Store-house little enough to take in, and to stow up, what from my Father's Treasury of Spiritual Goods was sent in to employ my whole time upon. Therefore I could rather have chosen Death, than be put by, or prevented from following of my Heavenly Vocation.

[3F 14:13] So it was shown me that the *Pit* which was prepared to swallow me up, should be ordained to receive what had oppressed and burdened me, and by the greatest plunges, our escape and deliverance would be wrought out. For by experience I found hereby a fear, and holy jealousy, lest I should be over-balanced with cares that proceed from the sensitive Life. And such were the eager out-cries of the soul, as it was heard to what it feared. For by strength of Faith I well know, God will suffer all to be brought under, that is now in exterior height of dominion. Oh, precious Grain of Omnipotency! God, even our Rock, will raise you up, to be our saving Friend.

**July 23, 1678**  
**The Fine Righteousness**

[3F 14:14] §. This Word came much upon me, put off your *Courser* sort of Righteousness, there is a much *Finer*, than what has yet been shown to any. The Bride of the Lamb shall soon come to under-

stand that it is no less than the Righteousness of God, spun out by Faith from the original Purity of the Holy Trinity.

**July 24, 1678**  
**The Wise Adventure**

[3F 14:15] §.The Word of Life opened this day, saying: Adventure to throw and cast yourselves upon the deep Ocean-Power; For thereby your sight will be so cleared, as to behold objects and things in the Heavenly Sphere: Which will plunge deeper into that Region, where every Decree of Faith obtains God's irreversible Seal. It is a good hazard to put yourselves upon this Open Sea, wherein is contained all Treasures, which the hand of Faith may draw up at pleasure, according as every exigence may require.

**July 25, 1678**  
**The Flaming Tabernacle**

[3F 14:16] §.When God shall pitch His Tabernacle for His Holy Ones, within the Body of the Sun, then shall they know a sure, quiet, and peaceable habitation. For All-Healing Power is found there, to help the Humble and Contrite Ones. But for the Rebellious and Disdainful, there will be no coming near this Burning-Sphere, placed in the Heart of the Sun. And it is set apart by God, for His Burning Element, that will consume all that is not of a New Created Mold from God's substantial ground.

**July 26, 1678**  
**The Flying Roll**

[3F 14:17] §.This Morning it was given me to consider of the Flying Roll, that has spread over the whole Earth with its Curse. That no one, in part or person in this Visible Creation, but have felt the effects thereof in the various Evils, that has been inflicted upon that Birth: Which is included under that dreadful sentence, which God denounced upon *Adam* and his offspring, upon his and *Eve's* Apostasy. So that the Earth should bring forth no more after the First Paradisical Institution; but with care, labor, and sorrow, as we have had daily proof of this heavy doom. But there was Secret Word cast into me: Look out from under this out-spreading Curse, and come under the saving Wing of your Jesus; for as His Birth grows up in you, so it will come to make void all of the bitter Worldly Curse. For redeeming Blood will set you free. The rich and deep Dye thereof will recover the Blessing again, according to the New Covenant, which is established by the *Law of Faith*, upon those who can live up to this. To whom the Spirit now expressly gives *New Laws*, according to the New Birth, which acquits us from the old traditions, customs, and manners, which the Curse has followed so hard upon. A Door is now opened for our escape, at the entrance of which, we are to leave those burdens that have made us bow and sink down so heavily. From which the Spirit of Jesus is come to set us free, as we keep the Law of Faith: who is that Anointing, which will break these uneasy yokes from off our necks. The Lord of Truth has spoken it.

**July 27, 1678**  
**The Tree of the Divine Magia**

[3F 14:18] §.This was the matter that first cast up itself in my mind, concerning Christ's inherent immutably, in this Corporeal Figure which we bear, answerable to His own Word: *He that abides in me, and I in him brings forth much Fruit*. Now it was opened to me, wherein this Fruitfulness did consist, by the Word that expressed it. That it was not only to be considered in a Wweet Habitual Flowing

out of Love, Humility, and Meekness, with all the mentioned Fruits of the Spirit: but it must come up to the Works and Deeds of Wonders; for so we are to show forth the Praises of Him who is the Root of our Life. For the Promise is yet to be fulfilled, that the same, nay, and Greater Things may be wrought, than the Wisdom of God saw necessary to be shown forth in Christ's Day. For this advantage the true incorporated Branches of this Vine have, that being once favored with the knowledge, kill, and discerning of that very near Union, through the Spirits' Birth in us, we may attract and suck in Magically great ability and power, if we expressly keep to that Divine Science. For our Lord being possessed with an Immense Treasure, can afford to give Gifts and Powers very plentifully, to furnish out those who are yet reserved in this world to Glorify Him, by His own Life-rising.

[3F 14:19] But now the great thing that is to be considered is: What Medium shall be used, for the drawing out these working Powers that may make out Christ's manifestation, in His Godhead Spirit and Power? For Chosen Witnesses will be known here again. Now then what will be the divine Art for this? Truly it was revealed to me, that it would be the constant unwearied pursuit, and eager Magical-Hunger, that would work itself essentially, through the *Mystery of Faith*: that is an ascending, penetrating Spirit that Christ the Lord will permit to take of His, and infuse all-powerfully; as if He Himself were come into a distinct Personality. For after this high appearance, He will move in His own Elect Body, and will Spirit them in Wisdom, for bringing things to that effect, that none else can do: because the access to the Lord Jesus is found through the Unction, that flows out as Oil.

[3F 14:20] §.Now it was further evidenced to me, that hereby we should come to know the Father and the Son: Christ's Life being lively drawn in us. And herein would be the most sure and excellent way of knowing Him, in beholding Him, as with open Face in the Mirror of Faith's Righteousness, as that which may become the covering of strength to our impotent Nakedness: For till we put on the Lord our Righteousness, the reproach of what we have born in ignominy cannot be obliterated.

[3F 14:21] Oh therefore, the Spirit has now plainly demonstrated it to me, that we must look to know God and Christ in ourselves, through the Spirit of Faith, which is the Clear Glass, in which we are to behold them, and witness the Power of Salvation going out from this Essential Union, answerable to this similitude that was set before me: A Great Tree was stretched over the Face of the whole Heavens. And from under the shadow hereof, various Roots of the same Nature of the Tree, did come up, from the shedding of the ripe Seed which did fall from the Tree. These young Stocks were of the same nature, although distinct, and but of young growth. So it was revealed to me, that from the Pure Essences of the Deity scattered into the Pure and Heavenly soil, so fitted and prepared, choice Plants would come from the great and Infinite Body, and through the waterings from the Upper Springs, and depths from the Center below, a Heavenly Body or Offspring will come forth, to bring Fruits according to its original, from where it had its Life-quickening.

[3F 14:22] For the confirmation whereof, that Scripture was given in to me: *I am come to give Life, and that more abundantly. That, As I have Life in Myself, so every Plant, which the Father has engrafted into me, the Tree of Life, may become Fruitful from a Life in themselves, fixedly from the Birth of the Spirit; so that you may well know the true Life-Tree by its Fruits that it brings forth. For the works that are to be brought from such Springing Stocks will sufficiently testify from what they are, and to what they are to return, as Rivers to their Head-Fountain, from where every individual stock fetches in its Life's Essence. For verily the Spirit shows that it must again come up to this Degree, to have all our works wrought in and from God's Essential Omnipotence: For that must only give credit to the Heavenly Born Ones; Who live amongst a perverse, carping, and unbelieving Generation, that will resist and deny all of God, which does not exceed all that can be imitated by way of*

Regeneration, which may express itself in a most Holy and Blameless walking, as to all just Actions, and doing all righteous Things in this World.

[3F 14:23] But something of a greater Evidence than all of this inward Sanctity and visible uprightness will be needed. For which end the Eternal and Divine Magia assuredly begins to move from its own Eternal Root, and will drive forth such kind and sort of Fruit, as is not to be known or tasted upon any other Trees, though called and termed *Trees of Righteousness*. For our Lord speaks of Branches in Him, that bear Fruit of some sort and degree, but yet are to be Purged, that they might bring forth in a more plentiful and wonderful manner. For so it becomes those who are the new Creation Plants, to hoist up the Sails of Faith above others, and to put in practice the *Rules of the Revealed Mystery of Faith*, and to wing up, though an *Ephah of Lead* hang upon them. That is, though all those heavy and ponderous Senses, that as a Stone would sink them to the Earth; but the rushing Wind of the Spirit, keeping up the Wing, may do great exploits, in and according to the Almighty working Power, that Christ the Lord wrought in His own Person. For so it will come to pass, that there will be a believing and owning the True Birth of the Spirit only, for the very works doing, and extraordinary flowing out of the Divine Power.

## Chapter 15

### July 29, 1678 The Refining House

[3F 15:1] §.In the morning I had the figure of an House shown me, that was but plastered over in the outside. And it was assigned for me, and such as did seek hiding from a tempest and overflowing Scourge, that would certainly come to devour much flesh who were not found under the Eternal Shelter. And for the confirmation of this, I did immediately see in a Vision, a Regiment of Creatures rise, that looked thin, ravenous, and hungry to get prey. And after this arose a strong and fierce company, clothed in Red Soldiers habit, they were very mute looking upon me, and I on them, but they had no Force or Power to harm me, for they were appointed to make spoil far away from the place, where I was. This last Company seemed to be of some other Nation, differing in looks and habits from the *English*. I found my Spirit rise against them, and I did haste away to the Plastered House, which within was all inlaid with Gold that shined, and in the Midst there rose a Burning Flame. And one did set there in a pure White Garment, to cast in all rough and unpolished Grains of Gold: and all sorts of Metals were to be tried and separated for the use of him, who was the refiner. And I heard him who was in White say, *Here is no hiding, but for those who can pass through this Burning Furnace, as Spirits made transparent, from the courser Grain, that can endure this Flame, and sustain no loss.*

### July 30, 1678 The True Habitation\*

[3F 15:2] §.The Word spoke: Move far away from this Polluted Place: And they who are the Lamb's true Mates, strive hard to come to view the Glory of your own Land. Be afraid to set your foot where is no bottom-Foundation; but know your True Habitation is elsewhere prepared; where are stable walkings, without cause of fear or jeopardy.

### July 31, 1678 The Seven Counselors

[3F 15:3] §.Many things from the inward Kingdom opened to me, and this in particular was advised: That we should bring all our difficult cases to be resolved, judged, and determined by those *Seven Principal Counselors*: who were to be found in their own private Court, within the circumference of the Heavens that were very near (and in) us. For we might fetch back the Kingdom by sound counsel with these Chosen Senators, that now are only manifested in the Invisible Region. And to get it established here would be the worthy undertaking of such who were spirited for it, and did hold in a Joint Union to pursue this thing in all resolvedness. Since it was by the Word that is Essential thus expressed to me, that the way was described to none more truly and livingly than to us, having light, wisdom, and counsel, for the bringing down this Kingdom, as the Victorious Prize: Therefore it was specified, that great need there would be for our Eternal Spirits, that are appointed Agents in this matter, to be used therein. Therefore be very much in a private, secret way of consultation with these Seven Counselors, that know the whole State of the Invisible World: For they are before the Throne

of God, and the Lamb, and as All-Seeing Eyes, run to and fro the whole circle of the Heavens and Earth; and all imaginarieness, whether Good or Evil, is evident before them.

[3F 15:4] So that it was pronounced to my hearing Ear: *High blessings and great blessings will be upon them who attend, and are guided from this Counsel, with whom all the Secrets of the Holy Trinity are known.* And it is of no light import, to be brought up under these Wise Senators, who will make us so wise, as may out-baffle all the Serpent's Subtlety. Which to this Day this visible Creation, stands under its Enchantment, and has not found the way out; having closed in with that Evil Counsel, suggested by the Treacherous Council, that is uppermost, and ready at hand, always sitting in the common and outward Court of the sensitive Mind; which has introduced that wretched and evil government, throughout this whole principle. From where are all cruel impositions, and sinful traditions, that make those who accost Christ's Lineage, to complain of the Oppressing Spirit, that rules from the consultation of the Prince and Power of Darkness. Which verily do at present bear the great sway in, and throughout all nations.

[3F 15:5] But a certain secret has been revealed by the Spirit, who is of this Council, and testifies that the Prophecy will now be suddenly fulfilled, by which decrees shall be established, going forth from this Privy-Council, that are constituted by the Great and Almighty King, to overturn and defeat all Counsels, brought out from the Hellish Source. For these Seven Princely Powers, erecting their Counsel-Seat in the most deep purified mind, will not give forth barely wisdom, knowledge, counsel, and sight of eternal things. They will send out force and strength, for the accomplishing and obeying this Great Authority. For without this, little progress will be made towards the bringing in of Christ's Kingdom: except superior might do attend, to perfect what is revealed as absolutely needful; or else the Armies of the Lamb, should be worsted by the potent power of the Beast. Thus would it be, if power should not rise from the Seven Spirits, to lay him and his Harlot waste, whose place and palace has been spread all over the Earth in great dominion.

[3F 15:6] §.But now it may be objected: Who, or what Spirit (though all desirous) can intrude into this secret Council-Chamber? Who can find here the Door of Entrance? They are so reserved in Wisdom and Counsel, as being of that Holy Train and Fellowship, as they do keep great distance from all that are of an earthly mold and mixed spirit. What hopes then can we have of admission into their Secret Council, being found of polluted lips? These Alledgements being raised and presented, I had the Vision, which I saw of the Refiner, that was in the House in-laid with Gold opened; and from this occasion interpreted to me, saying: Who would be joined to God's free Counselors, the number Seven, they must necessarily come into the *refining House*, for to be made fit and meet, to stand within the Circle-Throne of God's Council deep.

### The Spirit of Burning

[3F 15:7] §.Now as to the first part of the Vision, the mean appearance of the House, as to the outside, which was so glorious within, was shown me to be the Mortal Figure of this Terrestrial Body, that we do bear, into which the Refiner is come, and has inlaid His own pure Nature, as Gold for the most Holy Place: that God Himself may appear there, with His Holy Train in Council, all matters to determine, within the circumference of the purified Mind. And for this very cause, the Spirit of *Burning*, as the *Refiner*, is never to cease His Office, which is, to keep all clarified, that no soil of any corruptible thing, may have any abiding there. Because it is designed as the place, which the perfect Number Seven will descend into.

[3F 15:8] It was also certified to me, that our hearts and minds were taken up, for this and no other use, and therefore we are willingly to suffer the consumption, of what arises so fluently from the outward senses; therefore there is all need for the Refiner to maintain the Furnace. And if there were not a continual devouring Flame, to take hold of every wild Briary imagination, the Holy Place would never be vacant. Nor will it be free from those bustling crowds and waves, that would altogether drown the Arch-Angel's Trumpet-Sound, that is to awaken the Dead, who in us is yet to rise in its Spiritual Body, that is able to subsist and pass through the burning Flames; For we must be refined to this degree, before we can be admitted to God's most Secret Council. For the which, it may be well worth the giving up of all those evil and perverse Counselors, which would join to the Spirit of Mortality; for the promotion of a Life that must die, which the wise Council of the Holy Trinity would not have gratified.

[3F 15:9] §.Furthermore, the Spirit declared, that this Vision figured out the Last and Highest Degree of refining, which should consummate and make way for the Everlasting Council, sitting in the Seat of righteous Judgment. From which Decrees and Laws shall go forth, that shall be no more grievous; because the Mind of the Spirit that is refined, will be all agreeable hereunto with power and ability: Which for want of this thorough refining, could never reach to know the Hands of All-Sufficiency, to act out the omnipotency withal.

[3F 15:10] §.But here rises a Query: *What sort of Refining this is, from which is expected such wonderful effects?* For many and divers have been the Fiery Trials, that we have already passed through for purifying, that the Inward Mind might be cleared of all superfluities, which offend the Deity. He will take up none for His abiding, but where is a clear burning Furnace: Because Celestial Fire is God's Element, in which He is to be found and enjoyed, as in pleasant Light. The truth of which well answers the Query that is propounded, that all need there is, for this Spiritual Furnace to be kept up, through the springing and feeding Oil from the Everlasting Olive-Tree; wherein is the last and highest degree of Purification. For it will devour all but its own Light and Spirit: That so all may be capable to receive it, as a pure Mansion for the Holy Trinity and their Throne attendance to dwell in it. And from which the thundering rushing Powers, will go forth to act and work, after the manner of an infinite God.

[3F 15:11] That so it may be said, God is come to Tabernacle in the Earth, to fulfill His will as in Heaven, by this burning Furnace of the Spirit, that shall make man more precious than the Gold of *Ophir*, every way suited and adorned for co-habitation with God, our original Being. What but this Refining House will be our defense, keeping here till the grossness of mortality be consumed, that so we may meet and greet our now Glorified Jesus, in the midst of Everlasting Burning Flames. And then we need not fear facing that Soldiery, who are sent out from the Prince of this World, to watch and see whether or not we are naked, without our flaming Armor as our fence and covering. For which the Spirit gives great charge, that we stir not out, till we have it all quite about us. For it is said Great Perils will break in, and throughout the world.

[3F 15:12] §.The Vision sometime after this was again renewed, and I was made to behold the Seven Spirits before the Throne of God, as the Seven Burning Lamps within the *House of the Holy Ghost*. Who is coming, and is already come, into His *House*, as Refiner, having prepared and enkindled His Furnace, wherein must be formed the Pearl of the Kingdom. Which cannot be done but by, and with, the assistance of these Seven Principal Counselors: who therefore qualify and co-work with the Operator; that so there may be admission to stand also with them before the Throne of the Most High Majesty, when manifesting Himself in Earth as in Heaven, and to receive His immediate com-

mands, and the Hidden Knowledge of His Will, with respect to the affairs of His Kingdom, that is suddenly to be revealed, and the administration of the same by Elected Instruments, rightly qualified.

### **CABALA**

[3F 15:13] §.The World CABALA then much ran through me. And I could not tell what to make of it. It continued upon me for a whole Day. But the next Morning, pondering upon it, it opened itself thus: That the Word signified to me the *Privy-Council* of the Trinity, with the *Seven Spirits*. And blessed indeed are those that are worthy to be admitted into that Privy-Council; having been for that end admitted into the Refining House that was shown me. Which gave me occasion to pray that I might find that favor, with some others, that I made mention of, who might be taken into the *Divine CABALA*. Then it was answered: So it shall be, when yet more qualified for it. For now, it requires Special Endowments to make meet for so high a dignity: which by My Spirit must be performed, to stand in counsel with Me in the Inward Court, where the affairs of My Kingdom are to be determined, and renewed commands therefrom to be given, with Decrees that My Counselors (so admitted) shall jointly send forth with me, their Kingly Priest.

[3F 15:14] For which, consider what manner of Persons you mutually must be: first in high sanctity; then, in wisdom and soundness of judgment. For you shall pass judgment upon all matters and things belonging both to the Old and New Creation-State: And also know things present, and what is yet to come. For my Two Great Witnesses shall rest upon you, which are the Spirit of *Prophecy* and *Revelation*, that shall give ability, as Princes, to stand in my council: and therefrom to deliver out my Laws and Decrees. So shall you be ministering Spirits, to open the Ark of the *Living Testimony*; that till now has been much shut up. But to the Generations that are, and shall yet be born in the Spirit, now in this Age, to whom will be given a seeking and an inquiring Mind, it will verily be opened: To them shall my Secrets be revealed, that is, *To such as of the Divine Cabala do stand, with the ruling Scepter of Faith still in their Hand.*

[3F 15:15] §.Thus my LORD did most freely commune, and open the Sense and Mystery of the Word CABALA. Upon which we are obliged to attend diligently; retreating therefore from all that is terrestrial.

### **August 2, 1678 The True Shepherd's Call**

[3F 15:16] §.This Word was given: Follow on with the Eternal Powers of Eternal Might, now that you are set in the true Race-way, though many Stones of Offence may stand to block you up. For which exert the Power of *Faith* to remove all that would be a stop to the attaining what is yet remaining, for the consummation of the Lord's own free engagement: Which is to set the Seal of His Might to authorize our present flight from mortal creatures, and all terrestrial things, that would drive us back, as by a forcible storm. But the *True Shepherd* has said, That He will hold fast, and carry us, if weary, *in His own Arms*, till we come within the walls of strong Salvation. Therefore faint not.

### **August 10, 1678 God in Nature**

[3F 15:17] §.The Word of Counsel which came to me this morning was this: Strive with all internal power of might to put away the Earthly Life. The which, if you can once but come to cease from, then you will know those rising Essences from the pure Center deep, that through the fiery thirst,



may cause the Water of Life so forcibly to flow in: for the essential rising of God *in Nature*. That may go forth again in all Spirit of Power, to make known the Inherent Life of Christ, as forerunning the coming of His Mighty Kingdom into manifestation.

### Trim the Lamps

[3F 15:18] §. This Word also of instruction came to me, saying: I have made known most excellent and worthy things, tending all to the *Translating State*. Be wise, and let nothing of my Light be dimmed, but while the Oil runs, trim daily your Lamps therewith, that you may clearly see, and not stumble at those Stones of Offences, that may be thrown in the way. For as you move here, my Presence shall move with you; till you come to possess the Land of Peace, and Promise.

### August 12, 1678 What Comes Late Comes Double

[3F 15:19] §. THE Dove-Mourning-State, is attended with sorrows daily meeting upon me: because the expected Salvation is still deferred, looking for the coming of that Kingdom, that will release from all captivity. The detaining of which, puts me into a real soul-sickness oftentimes, which brings me low in my spiritual nature. Which no one sees or knows; for it is all invisible. No creature can minister in this case any release; God alone must be all herein for raising. Therefore we are taught only to repair to this Living, Healing *Rock of Ages*.

[3F 15:20] And truly, thus far I have experienced in low ebbs, when scarce any Life-Water has run, which has occasioned Spirit-failing in me; then suddenly a reviving has come from the Word of Life, that has raised up again. Which brings to remembrance that Word of *David*, How has the Lord quickened me, who had fainted, if I had not believed to see it made good, though for a time prolonged. Yet the Spirit, as a flowing Stream, comes in for healing. And this Word was given, to sustain the weary inward mind: *The Lord that numbers the Days and Years of your sorrowing Pilgrimage shall certainly return double peace and joy. Therefore in patience run the Race that is prefixed; For the Everlasting Counselors will not forsake those who pursue the most Hidden Pearl of the Kingdom. Therefore follow it on most eagerly, considering who it is that will be for you in the greatest of adversities*

### August 13, 1678 The True Priestly Habit

[3F 15:21] §. This Morning it was revealed unto me, by way of conference with the Anointing, that it was absolutely necessary to decline all whatever would interrupt pure conversation with God. And this Word in express was: *That Times and Seasons should be observed hereunto*. And as the Priests under that Mosaic Dispensation never undertook to perform anything of Spiritual Worship relating to God, but they put on Outward *Habits* for Distinction and Consecration, for their drawing near to God more peculiarly, so it was warned me never to approach near to God, without such a Spiritual Habit as it may be said, that we are Sanctified through the *putting on* of the Lord Christ, as our White Linen Ephod; which signifies perfect Righteousness, that thereby we may answer the requirings of the Most Holy God, who will be Sanctified by those, who are His True Worshipers: Who must act, and perform all from the Spirit, so adorned and separated from every polluted thing. And then the Lord by His Spirit affirms: That the Everlasting Testimony within the Ark and Holy Tabernacle, that now are concealed within the Heavens, shall be revealed, and given out by the hands of Christ, our great and most Holy High-Priest, when being found thus in His own Spiritual *Garb*, will meet us most fre-

quently, and make known such Secrets, as are not to be committed to any, but such as are Hallowed Vessels, set a part only for this very use.

**August 14, 1678**  
**Celestial Nitre: or, the Antidote**  
**in Persecution**

[3F 15:22] §. This night after some contest with the rational mind and will, which set hard upon me to shatter and unfix my confidence, because the Yoke was strait upon me, and the burdens heavy, and the Grand Adversary had every way considered how to add more grinding weights to bow me down: I found the Everlasting Arm was under to bear us through all. And it is clearly shown me that the same Almighty will ransom me out of the Hand of the Violent, that would take me by force. In which pursuit I saw myself chased up and down by Two Men that were fierce, striving to have me. And when they did meet together to encompass me, they had no power to take or hurt me, but I escaped from them.

[3F 15:23] Whereby I was shown the hard besetments which I should still have. For it was said to me, That a set time was given to Satan, to try all ways and means to prevent and make void the Birth, that was Heir to the Blessing. And therefore he is all vigilant to make use of his time, which has a period set. And if he can within the limits hereof despoil, kill, or make waste by invading the Holy Place, he has liberty, and may make great spoil and ruin. If not resisted by all the force and might that the Eternal Spirit can call in, to make the Heavenly *Michael* its Friend, else no possibility to hold out such pursuits. Therefore the Word cried in me: Be ever watchful, and feed upon the White Salt-Stone, that may keep from the Serpent's Venom. It is given for a healing Medicine. Your Life is in it. Therefore attract this Celestial Nitre, as the only Antidote to keep from the Earthy Poison that the Evil One has prepared.

**August 15, 1678**  
**A Visional Parable of the Sheep and a Wolf:**  
**or, the Thorny Passage**

[3F 15:24] §. This Morning there appeared to me some Sheep, that were hunted out of their fold, by a fierce Beast that sought for prey, but they got into a Strait Lane for hiding. But it was grown over with such bushy Thorns, that oftentimes the Sheep were stopped from passing through; The Thorns, taking hold of their Wool, which they suffered the loss of, for fear of the Pursuer. And at the end of the lane, there stood one with a Shepherd's Crook, and caught one by the Horns, and guided that Sheep along. And the rest, which were but few in Number, followed into a strong Walled Pasture, where many more Sheep were, feeding as without danger and fear. Many Tents I saw there also. This Vision shows its meaning.

**August 16, 1678**  
**An Admonition to Obedience\***

[3F 15:25] §. This Word came among the various instructions from the Holy Anointing: If you so love me as you have declared, then will you be zealous to obey *all* my charge. Then followed this Word, saying: Know you not that whoever would be of this World, can make no claim to the Celestial-Tree, from which the Fruitful Blessing descends. Therefore haste away from the pollution thereof.

## Chapter 16

### August 17, 1678 The Word of Faithfulness

[3F 16:1] §.Upon some occasion I was made to be very importunate with my God. After which being still and silent, this Word did spring; Why so disquieted and as one hopeless? Can or will God ever break Covenant, or alter that sure Word of Prophecy? Wait, and believe firmly: for nothing can be nullified that is under the Seal of the Spirit.

### August 18, 1678 The Sign, and the Thing Signified

[3F 16:2] §.ALL that has yet been revealed to you is but a forerunner. As it was said of Christ's coming, that the *Sign* of the Son of Man should first appear in the Heavens, but then the substantial Power and Presence must follow, as the thing *Signified*, which would put an end to all controversy. Now for the perfecting of this Great Mystery, all whatever is in your Heavens and Earth, must be given hereunto.

### August 20, 1678 How the Prophets of Old and the Apostles preserved the Word of Truth, unadulterated, while themselves were subjected to infirmities.

[3F 16:3] §.The discursive faculty of the Internal Mind was awakened, to propose with all freedom new queries to the Lord, and Master. With whom is infallible Knowledge and Wisdom, who is now present to answer and resolve all matters and things, of the most weighty and eternal consequence, as when conversant with His Disciples upon the Earth. Nay, His Spirit has verified it, that He through His Rising-Birth and growing stature in Spirit in us, is much more beneficial, that if He were in a Distinct Person to counsel and instruct, after the manner as when He was manifested in that Age in our corporeal form. For now it may be said, Lo I am at hand always to resolve whatever is dark and doubtful: And am to take my place as Judge and Law-giver, in the Court of a Heavenly Constituted Mind, where I must begin my Reign, and hold it, till all be wrought out, which cannot be said to be God. Again, the Eternal Word of Life is revealed, to dwell in a new Creaturely Being, assumed for that end, which will absolutely as a Bubbling-Well, expel all pollution in Spirit, Soul, and Body. Therefore it is more our advantage, to have Christ our Life in us, whose growth will bring in the Everlasting True Testimony, and Tabernacle-Witness, that will put an end to all scruples. Who as the morning will dissolve all darkness, so as we shall see clear Light in His Light, and be knowing in the Great Kingdom's Secrets. For Christ is the Key that will unlock the whole Mystery to us.

[3F 16:4] §.As was expressed this morning very powerfully, upon some questions presented by my Intellectual Spirit, which were to this purpose: *How the Prophets of Old, and the Apostles came to have the Wine of the Kingdom, given out into their Earthly Vessels; and not adulterated, they being of the same make that we are now, and had that in them which was not quite delivered from the Corruptible Thing, that might mix with the Word of Truth revealed?* As to this query, a full answer was

given: That the Wise Master Builder did evermore lay a clear foundation, to raise the Temple-Body, in which might be fixed the *Seven Eyes* that can see into all worlds. Therefore the Prophets of Old were called *Seers*, or deep searchers into God's Mysteries. Before Christ's glorification, the Word of the Lord did come as the *Voice of a Local-Speech*, which they heard, and could not tell from where the sound came, as we hear the Wind in its rushing noise, but do not see its original from where it blows. This was the manner that God revealed His Mind and Will before, and also in Christ's Day, when that noise came as Thunder, *This is my beloved Son, in whom I am pleased.*

[3F 16:5] So the Apostles had these kinds of Voices, though none heard them, but they to whom the Word came: As the Word came to *Philip*, and bid him join himself to the chariot of the Eunuch, to open his understanding. This was much God's way of revealing Himself, and such was the awe, and holy fear, that they dared not mingle anything of their own will or mind therewith. For God was ever severe to punish such, as did add or diminish therefrom. Therefore great dread was upon all the Prophets, to whom the Word of the Lord did come; it was as Fire that would have devoured them, if they had not vented it according to command. Then again the Lord appeared in *Dreams and Visions*, to make known eminently Himself, that so His own in this world might not be without a True and Perfect Rule, to order their conversations by: Though it is but rare and precious, where this is continued; for it has had its cessation. But some have its Witness still, from which they have been guided, and have thereunto taken heed, as unto their Leading-Star.

[3F 16:6] §.But this Day I had an information, that God would in a more excellent and certain way make Himself known, and that a Clear Glass was prepared for manifestation, which would be perfect and true: for the erring part must be taken away. For this Great Secret I was commanded to press into the Heart and Counsel of my Lord Jesus for a further discovery. Which was made out thus to me: That the purpose and intent of the Everlasting Father of our Spirits, is to fix Himself as the All-Seeing Eye, in a new Heart all clear as a Crystal-Glass. Which is capable to behold, in the light glance of the Majesty, what presents from that marvelous high Sphere, out of which our Eternal Spirits came, and to that pure Light Element shall now return, as to our native mansion; though yet seem to hang there on a gross Corporeal Body, that might be a hindrance to the Divine Species.

[3F 16:7] I have often made in way of objection to the Revealer of Secrets, who has now verified that: There shall be no Cloud in the way, more than the Lord Christ's Humanity was, to the knowledge and sight of what was open to Him from the Invisible Heavens. Through that is also given me to know, that this course grain of a Terrestrial Body, shall no longer remain upon the Pure Spirit, than till it may attain the full growth of its own Spiritual Body. For which, Time is allowed for to reach the Full and Perfect Stature thereof. That so the vile part of the Terrestrial, all covered upon, may be with the Glory of the Celestial: this is and will be the Redemption of the Body that is promised. But the inward Sight and Revelation in Christ our Light is first to come, so as to purge and cleanse from all of Sin's Leaven. This is the conquest that must go before the putting on the *White Raiment*, which is the Visible Body that is incorruptible.

[3F 16:8] But while things are working in order hereunto, the Gate that looks into the *Eternal East Country* will be opened unto such a Spirit, upon whom the Single Eye is fixed, such a one may both see, and hear, and know, what low Mortal Spirits cannot believe, nor receive. Therefore to those, who are born substantially of God's Spirit, the naked and simplified Truth shall remain as it is in Jesus. And it is this Truth that shall set free from the Mortal Beast, that is such a disparity to the Heavenly Being, who is now in a transparent Figure of Glory. And all that your Head Prince aims at, is so

to work in us, as to fashion us into the same Image of Glory, like to Himself: Then we shall have all freedom of Spiritual Association with our Lord, in this way of Translation.

[3F 16:9] For to this end, all Light of Revelation is, that a Fountain-Water of Life may spring, to make the dark soil of the mind, to become all pure and clear, meet to become the very Glass in which we may behold the Celestial World, in all its several Principalities, and Dominions. The view of which will give suddenly the Transformation, for a conversation with the Holy Trinity, which consists in a continued Soul-Ravishing Joy. Therefore the Spirit of Jesus testifies that to look out and deeply search into these Precious Things, and fully apply ourselves hereunto, we shall assuredly give the best account of our Time: that to this end shall so run out, as to reach the Golden Number, which has neither Beginning nor End of Days; In whom is our fixation, for a Glorious Transfiguration every way meet for such company as are in that High Sphere.

**August 25, 1678**  
**The Sun-Stone Rising Out of the Earth**

[3F 16:10] §. This morning as I was waiting, I found such a deep Immersement with the Fountain-Light, into which my Spirit was drawn, and carried to see a place where there was much Earth, but it was cleared away, and an hollow place or Vault, like to a Cave. Into which I was called to follow one that was my Guide. At first it seemed to be dark and dismal: But after I was in, there sprung out a bright Fiery-Stone, the shine of which did lighten that Dark Place. It was as Sparkling and Glorious as the Sun. But the Earth covered it by some shakings that often fell upon it, and quenched the luster thereof, so as it did not give forth its Light: but after a little season, it broke through again, and overcame the darkness. And it was thus opened unto me: That this was a Similitude to show us our own Internal State, how obnoxious the Pure and Flaming Stone was to the Earth's showering down upon it. And this Word came to me: *There is no other way but to bind the loose Earth, so that the Light may shine free.*

**August 28, 1678**  
**Interpretation of this Magical Stone**

**The True Speech**

[3F 16:11] §. Wisdom's Cry is still, turn into my enclosed Deep, where the Law of *Silence* is of force. Cease all Fleshly Reasonings, for nothing of that is to be heard there: The Holy Trinity will not bear it. For it prevents all Internal Communing in the Spirit's Language, which is so pure and clear, as no other Tongue is permitted to speak there. All Vocal speakings may be spared; they are too vulgar, too low, where Spirit with Spirit does only appear.

[3F 16:12] Thus it was give me to know and hear the *Ethereal* Sounds from the Eternal *Nothingness*, which forms the True Speech, which cannot be understood by any Rational Spirit; whose first essence is all enmity thereunto. But the Super-Rational Mind is brought up to hear and understand what is out-breathed from the Celestial Air, which comes sometimes as a Rushing Wind, and then as a Soft Oil, does run as in a secret mildness. Which I am made now to know is God's way of Speech, in which He discourses Himself from His own immense deep. And when the Spirit can separate from the rational Soul, and immerse itself with the supersensual Light of Life, which is so near; Then we may discourse with God abstractedly, and the Golden Vein will run free from the Fountain-Mystery,

that may make knowing in the Celestial Chemistry, for the pure Elixir that will cure the Mortal Life, and redeem from the evil effects of Sin, and from all that which Corruptibility has brought in.

### A New Course of Living

[3F 16:13] For the attaining of which Light of discovery, the Holy Breath affirms, that a new course of Living is to be taken up for this attainment, which must be absolutely winnowed from the floor of Chaffy Sense: and every property that may be of use, for working in the hidden ground, where the *Sapphire Elixir* is extracted, for the use of Eternal Life. Which shall be given as a recompense to those who are already passed through the First Death, for they thereby shall sound and fathom the excellency of this *Magical-Stone*; Which will put an end to the finishing Mystery, unto a full refining of both Spirit and the Vile Body, as now it is with our Lord Jesus. For herein is the True Philosophy, or Diving Chemistry to be learned to extract, and sublime, and spiritualize out Pure Matter, from what is course and of a gross Earthly Part; that has hung so fast to the Heavenly Essence. So that the Furnace of Everlasting Burnings must be fixed on necessity, and then diligently attended upon, till the dark black matter become white, clear, and shining, as transparent Silver. For this formation the Spirit has now convinced me, that great industry is required, and that considering the rich weightiness of this Celestial Elixir, all expense of time will be needed here accordingly, for the possession of it.

[3F 16:14] There is a Worldly Furnace that will bring great benefit to the exterior life, which the wise in this Out Birth greatly pursue, to affect their Stone, for Corporeal Fame and Temporal increase which could never deliver from Sin or Death. Yet to what strict attendance have they given themselves over hereunto? Now this Outward is a true figure of the Inward. And since we who in a Spiritual combination have been driven by the Spirit, to look into the Mystery of this Celestial Stone, and to find it out in its high Magnitude, much more time must be allowed here for the making of it. As the great Master of this Secret has several times averred, it is no Work to be slighted over, or carried on in a divided Mind: as it was shown me by way of Vision; From which this conclusion was drawn, by the true Inspirator: That whereas I saw the Circling Earth-mold so often fall down upon this Shining Stone, what quenchieings and damping Clouds were brought upon it; so that for a time it could give no Luster, but was buried as in a dark Body.

[3F 16:15] Whereupon a deep sense was awakened in me, to plead much in Prayer that this hovering Earth might be restrained: which I have found by long experience, to be smothering to the Flaming-Stone, which to a Body of Light would penetrate, were it not so often choked, by taking thought for those things, which pertains to the temporal Life. For which I have striven to put off all care and concern upon this account, and so to be as Christ's Lily, growing and springing up in the midst of a thicket of bushy cares and snares, and where the Underminers are ever casting up the Earthly mold that would soil the Lily-Robe that is put on. Being in this Divine Sense, expostulating in holy fear with my God and Father, lest it should never have a stop or cessation, but still be in hazard of the earthly mold falling down upon this precious Gem, I was made to propose forcible arguments to Him, from whom my Redemption must come. Who in a soft Ethereal sound did give assurance, that the earthly choking cares, should not always and forever thus molest and trouble us, who were bent in all earnestness, in the process for this Pearl of the Kingdom. For this Word was given me, saying: After suffering a while, you shall come to possess the power, which shall fast-bind all this encompassing Earth.

[3F 16:16] And further querying *how* and *when* we might expect the effects hereof, it was shown me, it would be by the Strong Rising Degree, of this pure enkindled Burning *Sapphire*, that would deliver itself (as it is the Firstborn and Heir of God and His Almightyness), through all depressing afflictions, which are as so many dropping Clouds for quenching it. Yet as the Spirit of our Souls observe and obey the Holy Laws and Institutions, which conduce for its rising-glory, there will not fail a *Solomon* to survive, as the Everlasting Seed, who will possess *David's* Throne; which figures out our Lord Jesus, with whom the Covenant is established. And as we are found after His Heart, so the Pearl of the Kingdom will break through in Power and Dignity, and will certainly come to possess the Gates of the Enemy, who has so long envied our Peaceable Reign, in the Lord's Sabbatical Day. But it will be brought to pass by the same Wonder-Working Arm of JEHOVAH, whose Spirit will do marvelous things through and by us, as He did by Moses, against *Pharaoh* and his *Egyptian-Host*. All which we have Mystically to encounter with, each one in ourselves: But the Holy One is come, and will redeem by miraculous powers, what is in Covenant.

[3F 16:17] Great and Mighty things will show forth themselves, because Christ is rising from the dead in His Saints, and will execute the power, that has been gotten through this Death, which will amount to a high degree of Sovereignty. Therefore does the Spirit often echo, and cry: Blessed are they, who are passed through this Death, that the Spirit may come to figure out a new Quickening Life-form, according to the Spirit's Eternal Generation: that is, to plant the New Creation; where Christ the Head Principality will appear to us. For as He is, so we in this Risen State shall ever behold Him in ourselves: as the Image of the invisible power of perfection. Oh, who would not Love and be reconciled to the most bitter and sharpest stroke of Death, that so Plants of the new Resurrection-Ground, we may be Everlastingly Rooted in Him. Hasten it, O Lord Jesus, and work Mightily in us, for it.

### September 1, 1678 The Shooting of the Gulf

[3F 16:18] §.I did see the Crawling Worms at the Root of the Vine-Tree, still very busy to prevent its springing to its Perfect Degree, which brought great anxiety into me, taking thought how to free it, from what would suck the springing Sap, as it did rise to feed every Life-property withal. Such are the creeping Earthly Essences, which arise from a ground that is not walled with Sapphire-Stones round about. For so it was spoke in me: That such a guard must be about our principal ground, where the *Stone of Power* and Might does lie, from the One Eternal Element contacted. The wise and understanding Heart must seek it out for the defense thereof.

[3F 16:19] After this great concern in my Mind, for its clearing from all Earthly Cogitations, though lawful as to the Outward Life, yet now too heavy for a Spirit that would be always moving in its own *Ethereal* Nature, from an inspired Light that provokes to a lofty flight: In this Contemplation I reposed in the night, and I was carried with some other in a Boat, and there were skillful Rowers. But we were tossed of one side, but not much frightened, because we knew the guides were sufficient, that had the Oars in their hands: and they could not row us to the port, for which we were designed without the Shooting of a Gulf, which they spake nothing of, when we first entered upon the Boat. But I unexpectedly felt it descend with a mighty force, and rise again. Upon which I perceived, we had shot the Gulf, and had escaped the danger, before I knew I was upon it. Thus the Lord and True Pilot, who by His Eye foresees our way, and by this Vision gives assurance, that from the Gulf of sinking Care, we shall certainly be delivered. For after the Vision the Word spoke, and did comfort hereupon, minister all refreshingly against carking cares, that at present did oppress the Heavenly Mind.

**September 2, 1678**  
**The Vision Interpreted**

[3F 16:20] §.It was opened further from this Vision concerning this Gulf, that when Faith's Life comes to be strong, it will run the whole hazard of sinking into the Deep Abyss, where no bottom is, but God's Immensity, where the Outward Senses will be drowned, which have been so long the parting Cloud between God and the Soul. Here possibly we may come to lose that Life, that has made all the strife and enmity, from which, we have now studied in Christ's Light, to be freed therefrom. The Spirit evidently shows that this is the true and safe way to engulf and suspend the Man of Strong Reasoning: which satisfies the saying of our Lord, *He that will thus venture to lose his Life, shall keep it to Life Eternal.*

[3F 16:21] We have tried many ways the sinking and overturning the depraved Life of Nature, from its own First Conception, but could never bring it to such an annihilation, as no more to receive again. This is an advantageous Gulf to Shoot, whereby the Earthly Life is sunk, that so by a forcible rebound, the Super Rational Life may move upwards to its own Essential Light: I say, that it may move pure and free, and unclogged of sensuality. Then we may pass, and be most friendly entertained by the Everlasting Father of Pure Spirits, who will know us again in that more refined and excellent state, which may transcend the very Angels, whose familiarity will be common to us. Ah my Lord, shall this Vision according to this Interpretation be made good unto us. Let us not then delay to hazard all for so great a God.

**September 8, 1678**  
**A Call out of Babylon**

[3F 16:22] §.My Spirit meeting with some things inferior to its Birth-descent, which to conform unto was much disagreeing: yet it must be born at the present, for the Outward Image's sake, because all in order to Redemption is working out. For hereby I am made to inquire: Where lies the Redeeming Power that may ease and free from all turmoil that belongs to the outward Life? Many fervent invocations have been to the one Fountain-Rock for deliverance: yet the weight not removed, the Oppressors do not cease; the Starry Dominion runs on its race, no Power Superior is yet risen to check and control the same.

[3F 16:23] As I was thus debating and asking counsel in this matter, what farther skill, and wisdom was to be given to set free the oppressed Life, I did see my own Spirit as a Fire-flash, running up and down: sometimes descending into a Sea most deep, then ascending up to the *Ethereal* Clouds in a swift motion, taking up rest nowhere, but resolved to pass through all known, and unknown Regions, to find out the Mystery of its own Original. For in reality this Pure Thing cannot well bear to be under restraints, and imposed upon by Powers, that are thwarting to the New Creation-Laws. Therefore the Spirit of the Soul is all-seeking, how it may perfectly restore both Body and Spirit, to its First and Ancient Degree, as was known in Christ, before the Foundation of the World.

[3F 16:24] While my Spirit was thus in its restless boat, it was met by a soft Seraphic Voice, that thus spake: *Why, as a panting Hart or as a chased Roe, do you pursue after that free and unmolested State, where no defect in Spirit or Body shall be known? Your care, fear, and volatility in this matter are taken notice of by the Holy Trinity.* Then I took boldness to reply: True, it is great kindness, Oh, my Comforter, that the cause of my Spirit's restlessness is by the Great JEHOVAH understood: But that is not all the favor that I implore. For I am moved to seek and ask much more out of your God-



head Store, from which a Vessel choicely Perfumed with sweet scented Oil, is ordained by you; Which shall be no more profaned with polluted matter, from this evil sinful State.

[3F 16:25] §.I also heard a never-ceasing call from *Sion's Orb*, crying: *Come out of Babylon, shake off the Dust, that changes the Nazareth-beauty. Come, I say, away; Grieve not to leave the Sodom-City; then shall you know the great goodness, that may run inherently, and again flow out, as a River of Life pure, from God the Fountain.* Then superadded was this Word: Try and prove your Heavenly Father herein: If you come to any loss, charge it to the account of the great and Lordly Steward, who has counseled hereunto. For with Him is the infinite Stock of Life, in which all rich powers and gifts, are to grace and dignify such who shall be exposed to great shame and reproach in the World's Eye.

[3F 16:26] Upon this sure Testimony given, I was persuaded in my Spirit to take Anchor-hold upon this Word of Promise; setting down, what it might cost me, as to all worldly repute and friendship: Which upon several accounts, I might have more cause to need than ever. But I was to stop, silence, and encounter against all those self (and fleshly) reasonings. I now perceived this was the *Gulf* which I saw lately in a Vision that was shot by me. And through the peril of life must we go, before the Kingdom Treasury shall in very deed be possessed, and given as a peculiar Dowry, which will quit the cost of all suffering and loss.

[3F 16:27] But how rare it is to find anyone that can trust God in this matter, though God, ever since the Creation of the World, has kept His Word and Promise with all. The Believers in all Ages have given witness thereunto: And such Valiant ones that have forsaken and denied all things of this exterior life have had a *Joseph's* Portion and Blessing for it. And although this is recorded for a full assurance, yet how hard it is, for Spirits in Elementary Bodies, to confide for all supplies, which the Eye of Reason cannot foresee. So as great has been the controversy, and still is; For God will prove us, as He did those, who by Faith subdued Kingdoms. Although we are loath to rend and break through the fore-skin of our Flesh, yet nothing less is required. For while the Earthly talking Essences are bustling in the mind, the Magia of Faith lies bound, and cannot rise.

[3F 16:28] §.Now the great Query: *How possibly can the Earthly Thoughts be suspended? During the time of the Bodily Life, they will act their part for self-preservation.* §.But what saith the Lord of the New Creation: All the goodness of this Out-Birth, and the sensitive faculties, that there belong, are to be brought to Annihilation and Conflagration, that through this cessation, there may arise a Spirit and Life of actuation, that yet has not been scarce born in any. It will be a strange and Wonderful *Child*, which the Starry Heavens can make no claim to: For its descent will be from that One unfading Element, that includes the Deep Magia; Which is the portion and lot, that pertains to this Supersensual Birth. Into which let us pray to be Born Again, to reign over all the earthly sense.

[3F 16:29] §.Some few days afterward, a clear manifestation was given by the Spirit, concerning this Wonderful Birth, or high Magical Child of Faith, with a peculiar application, and express determination of the same, to this Nation of *England*, in a visional representation of the State of Religion therein, according to the now several divided forms of it, in Number Six, and what thereupon ensued in the rise of a Seventh, or an Holy and Virgin Church, that is to stand with the Lamb upon *Mount-Sion*, by the most signal reformation and re-union of the scattered Holy People, and many succedent events symbolically figured out. Which was after published, upon a fresh travail in Spirit for this to be accordingly brought forth, that was felt by some at the end of the year 1695 and the beginning of the year 1696, being not only addressed to this, but to all other Nations professing the Name of Christ, in the *First Message to the Philadelphian Society*; And which is now beginning to be fulfilled.

## Chapter 17

### September 24, 1678 The Passover

[3F 17:1] §.From the open flowing Spring, as beholding in a Crystal Stream, how, and after what manner, Redemption is to be wrought out. (For which the piercing Uncion bore the Ear for to hear, what is further to be yielded in order hereunto;) This Word did run through in a pure soft Breath, giving a charge that no Leaven should be found within our Habitation. For the Lord's *Passover* is at hand, in which He will rise, and go before us. And His Invisible Armies shall deliver that which has been under secret oppression. But we must then forbear anymore to taste of the old Leavening Lump, since the Flesh of the Holy Lamb, is now to be our Meat, with the pure Blood of the Grape: Whereby the strength of Spirit will feelingly increase.

[3F 17:2] §.[This is the *Passover* of the *Philadelphian Church*, whom a Trumpet from the Heavens now calls, to go forth out of the Land of their Captivity, and out of this House of Bondage; wherein they have been so long made to serve after the manner of the rest of mortals. The Voice of this Trumpet has been frequently heard by this Author, as She elsewhere sufficiently declares, in the several Treaties by Her published. And a Scheme of this Blessed State has been given down from above, by the Hand of this dear instrument, in order to a *Figuration*, or *Formation* of the same, that must of necessity precede its *Vivification* or *Animation*; accordingly as it was some days after most expressly and emphatically shown, in the manner following, by a Figurative Representation.

[3F 17:3] And for this end the Divine Wisdom has seen it expedient and necessary to call forth this *Third Volume* of the *Openings of the Spirit* into Light: that it may be a lively Portrait, Pattern, and Model, in this and the approaching Age, whereby to excite Faith accordingly, so that from this a Spirit entering into it, may come to be perfectly animated, in many who shall Read and Believe what is here delivered from the Revealer of these deep and Mysterious Things; who also is the Worker of them. And He cannot cease to Work, till all this be brought to pass, according to what is in the Idea or Pattern exhibited: that so the great Triumphant *Passover* may be celebrated, and the Song of the Lamb be sung; which none can sing but such as shall hereby, through High Divine Favor, attain to the Glorious Mark of the First Resurrection, as upon the Holy Hill of SION, where is to be the Seed of the *Love-Kingdom*: and upon which the *Philadelphian* Firstfruits are to be gathered. This may suffice for a better understanding of the connection with that which follows.

### October 8, 1678 Formation and Animation

[3F 17:4] §.There was presented the Formation of a Visible Body, as out of fine mixed matter, thin and clear, and every member formed as the Potter pleased. So the Figure of a Man was thus modeled before my Eye, in all comeliness; no one part defective: But there was no Life. And I was called upon to take notice of this Image that was so fair and comely, but there wanted a moving Life to act it. And it was said to me: Do you see this fair portrayed Image, which shows, what the new Created Being is, as in a Figure transferred: but what can this do, till Breath of Life enters in? Then discoursed the Spirit further this matter with me; declaring this was to show me that the most Beautiful Form,

and show of a Heavenly Compact before, was but as a *Picture*, that only attracted speculation. But for want of an Actual Life, it could no way be serviceable, either upon God's or Man's account. The sense of this entered very deep into me; that so fine a piece should want a vigorous Life. But I was exhorted to be quiet, and sit a while, and I should see Life would move. Which accordingly came into every part, the Eye first moved, then motion throughout-stretched the Arms, and Feet, walking to and fro in all activity.

[3F 17:5] §.[The next day some things were shown relating to the Outward State of the Political Body, in this Nation, that was designated to be set in a Flame. Which Flame was in part, but not totally, to be extinguished: that both the Justice and Mercy of the supreme Majesty might the better appear. Which it cannot but do to as many as have Eyes to see what GOD is now doing, and about to do, in the Kingdoms of the Earth (and in this of *England* especially), for the advancement of the Righteous, and Peaceable Kingdom of His Son.] October 11. 1678.

### Interpretation of the Foregoing Vision

[3F 17:6] §.THE Vision that appeared this 8th of *October*, 1678: The signification thereof much followed me: and the Spirit would not let me bury it, in the Depths of that understanding, from where it opened, without writing the Interpretation thereof; Which was thus revealed to me: That this fair and comely *Image* that I saw fashioned and formed out, is the Second Framed Piece out of the Third Heavens, or from *Mount-Sion's* clear ground. The *First Paradisical* Figure, being turned into a corruptible fleshly being, is driven out from the open Beautiful Face of God; because of the gross and Vile Matter of the body. Now in this Terrestrial Form, there is a high graduated Soul and Spirit; that are entombed (as Dead) there, and slain: and this Spirit cannot fully rise, because it wants its own *Ethereal* swift winged Body, that in the twinkle of an Eye, will fly to its own Celestial Climate.

[3F 17:7] Who then is it, that rest in hope, to have their Spirits joined unto this new Modeled Body, but those, who consider (and do well know) that this present Body is as a damp Earthly-Smelling Grave, which the Spirit longingly waits to rise out of? But now its Original Body is preparing out of that High, Holy, Pure Matter, that will far exceed the *Paradisical make*: For it will be from that, which the Glorified Person of our Lord Jesus was from; Who was found in that Transparent Figure of Glory (distinct from the former), which was before *Paradise*. And of that super-excellent kind, we do expect to be restored unto, and with such a Body, to rise out of the Tomb and Grave of this Vile Body, when all the Tabernacle is fitly framed in the Heavens. From which, with a *Mount-Sion-Shout*, it will come down to clothe us upon, as the bright Burning of God that will scorch up all Corruptible Flesh: which cannot subsist in the Light Body of an uncreated Sun, where this new Tabernacle-Body is to walk and fix, as in its true Heavens of Heavens. But though this be the proper Native Body, that belongs to the Eternal Spirit, yet through its lapse, and sucking in the Serpently Essences, it is cast into a strange Mold, little differing (as to the outward gross Flesh) from those common animals, who are in the course Grain of Flesh and Blood: But that we are distinguished in common, by an understanding rational Soul.

[3F 17:8] And then more eminently there are, that do excel through a new-Born Spirit; That as it comes to grow up, is all wise and knowing to find out its own Original Nativity: and is seeking to search out, what may release and free from such a vile and unsuitable Body, whose Members are no way agreeable, for an inspired Spirit to act forth itself through. And though it may be owned, where Regeneration is, the evil Nature and Principle is changed, and that there is an inward framed Spiritual

Body (which God, and such that live in his discerning Eye, do espy), even Christ's invisible Body, which is compacted of great Spirituality; yet does it want as at first, the Breath of Life to be inspired into it, as from a rushing Wind from the Deity. And no more than an *Image* can be said to be in comparison of what afterwards it is to be. And that comely, beautiful Body of Holiness, which was presented to me in Vision, was but the platform of the Heavenly *Image*, jointly knit, in order to receive the *Seven Forms* of Life that are acted in their impregnable Might to rise out of the Dead Tomb of the Earthly Body.

[3F 17:9] §.But that which from the Vision was chiefly noted unto me, was the actlessness for some space of time, of this Inward Man, that was thus fashioned into a pure and righteous nature, and yet found weak and spiritless. Which signified: That Christ has His *Formation* in all His Spiritual Lineaments, in the Womb of Time, in the Terrestrial Image. And this may be considered, as the fruitfulness of the Spiritual *Conception*, but is not yet come to draw in all degrees of a Ghostly Powerful Life, that may free from Laws and Rudiments, imposed by the Astral Spirits, that have Dominion in this outward Region. Now though there may be an attainment to a Holy framed Composition of Mind, enlightened, purged from the Leaven of every known Evil, sanctified, and renewed according to the Image of the Heavenly, yet this is but as *Adam* was a pure Angelical Creature or Image, before the out-breathing of the Deity entered in to empower with a free active Life. So that by all this, whereto most have yet got up, but makes out a weak Infancy: And that the mighty potent Breath of the Holy Ghost, has not rushed in to show forth His uncontrollable Power and Authority, to give a pass out of the confined Womb of a Grave-tomb; To come forth with an united Spirit and Body of Power, to ascend into Heavenly places, there to behold the Face of Jesus.

[3F 17:10] §.Object. *But this position may be contradicted, that the Regenerated Man is not a dead actless Spirit, but is full of good works, and abounds in the Fruits of the Spirit, glorifying His Creator.*

[3F 17:11] §.Answ. True, that in some sense, this may be called a Life: but compared to the pure unmixed Life, that is in the New Raised Spiritual Body, and is actuated by the Holy Ghost, it is a weak, impotent, Breathless Life. For what is it we can do, that may speak God is come to move in His own Eternal Properties, in Nature's restored Figure? For a thorough Redemption must extend to this, namely, the Redemption of the Body. As one speaks in a certain place: Or else in vain did Christ die, and rise again, if we do not follow in conformity: as He *Actually* and *Declaratively*, so we *Mystically*; laying down our lives, that in the Power of the Holy Ghost, we might come to take them up again, after the order and power of an Endless Life. That may have force irresistibly, to go forth with the Scepter of Kingly Dominion in our hand, to conquer all, that shall it withstand. This is the activity of life, only worthy to be termed Life: That which is otherwise, is but the *Name to Live*, though wrought up to a high pitch of sanctification. For no mighty works can be made manifest, while Sin and Death are not come under conquest.

[3F 17:12] §.But it may be objected: *This is such a high degree of glory and Liberty, as none can see their way into, nor any possibility to know such a Redemption after this kind, but what may come after the Death of this body. But to expect it while in a Corporeal Image, may prove a great frustration.*

[3F 17:13] §.Answ. Thus argues the Man of Flesh and Blood, in the strong reasoning Spirit, that would preserve itself. It can by no means yield up to the Cross of total Crucifixion, as the first step hereunto. If discourse, and applause of it, and ownment as the true ready way hereunto, would but carry it off, many would be hanging upon the Cross. But this will not do; the Life of the Beast with all its acquirements, and Goodly accomplishments must go for it. Could this be but expired, then we

should know what kind of Life would come to act and move in the room and disappearance of the old; as a new Springing Heart, that would have nothing issue forth, but the powers, and miraculous working wonders of the Holy Ghost, to Hal the Sick, to Raise the Dead, to enter with Inspiring Flames, to Beget Spirits into this High Union; Which then would be no difficult or hard thing. Therefore the consideration of such transcendent effects (as will certainly follow the process of our Lord Jesus) may be of great force so to prevail, as really to see Death as a Treasure: and to rejoice in all Sufferings and Tribulations, that shall bring us hereunto. *Oh, that we might valiantly Shoot this Gulf, and not love that Life which is the very dark Valley of Death, that has kept us from entering into the Risen Body in which is All-Power and Might!*

**October 19, 1678**  
**Beware of the Concision**

[3F 17:14] §. This Word visited me in the morning, saying: Be well assured the Lord has respect to what His own hand has wrought in you, formed, and framed. From this will the glory of God's Tabernacle appear, as you are watchful. Be aware of the *Concision*, that works by and through the Tempter, that passes through the Outward Man, who is in the Adverse Spirit. Then this Word distinctly spoke, Take heed, and give no place to that which would separate what God has designed to unite, and to be in agreement for the strengthening to proceed on, for that which is to be wrought out to the Life Exaltation. Be perfectly therefore of one mind; and then you will have great force and power to fetch down that which will bless you, out of the Celestial Treasury. For that is it, in which your portion stands.

**October 20, 1678**  
**The Workmanship of Christ: or,**  
**The Sealing Image**

[3F 17:15] §. This Word in the *Revelation* (2:26), was called over in me: *He that Overcomes and keeps my Work unto the end, to him I will give Power over the Nations.* It was a passage that I had not taken notice of: the opening of which was very significant. Inquiring what was meant by this work, it was thus given into me: It is not enough to keep my *Sayings*, and to observe my *Words*, but look to what I have *Wrought*. The emphasis lies in Christ's appropriating it to be *His Work*: not what is the Creatures. For that would not be worth taking care to keep it up, whose righteousness is as the Morning Dew that passes away; therefore to be little set by: because they are such, as will never pass through the Burning Element.

[3F 17:16] But now to define what the Lord Christ means by *His Work* (which must needs be a fine wrought Piece, which no other can parallel with, being one entire Work), this Word of encouragement came to me: The Grand and Eternal Mystery of all Truth is like a Tree full ripe, that would be unburdened of its Fruit, to those who hunger after it. Now then seek on (saith the Word of Life): from within the Truth of Righteousness will spring. Upon this, there was the Figure of a *White Stone*, and a wonderful and Perfect *Image* engraved upon it.

**The Artificial Hand**

[3F 17:17] I was carried in the Spirit's Eye to see this, and was charged here to wait, to behold its further Ornaments; which by an Artificial Hand was put on, as an embroidering with Leaves of Gold. This (said the Spirit) is a Representation of the *Workmanship of Christ* the Lord: that carefully is to be kept up in its Beauty and Ornaments. Wherever Christ has after this manner drawn His own *Liv-*

*ing Image*, not as a dead picture, but a Life-moving Creature; This requires all watchfulness to preserve from defacing. It is no common or ordinary framed work, which comes to this Degree of a Christ-formation. This is matter and substance beyond all of Light, Knowledge, and whatever can be declared. This is what is wrought *in God*, and after the Express Image of the Deity, of an absolute new make: wrought out by the skillful hand of *Wisdom*, as a meet Tabernacle, that God will adorn with Glory. This world of charge belongs only to such, as are thus far wrought upon; which upon examination is very rare to find such an Engraving in every part thus fitly framed, so as to make up a complete Heavenly Building.

### The Feeling Life

[3F 17:18] §.It was shown also and testified, where this could be witnessed in any, in the Feeling Life (beyond all dead Workmanship), it would soon come to know their own Hand of Might to hold the *Rod of Iron*, that should Dash the Nations, who are joined to the Beast, to make War within and without our Gates. But now this is not sufficient, that we are Engraved and Carved upon, though indeed it is the Foundation-Matter. Yet except we hold out all the suffering part, for resistency against this singular Workmanship (which is so expressly drawn after the *Lord our Righteousness*), it is not enough. For strong assaults and batteries will not be wanting, to weaken and make this Building to shatter and fall, if possible. Therefore is needful an Hourly Watch, to keep over what is thus fashioned and wrought: or else as far it is gone, it may suffer loss in respect of those Promised Immunities of Dominion, through the Gift of the *Morning-Star*: Which has Power to Bind and Loose the Starry Constellations that has born such Rule in the now Visible Creation, in this old Region.

[3F 17:19] Now, that we may come to be Conquerors over all this Elementary Life, we are instructed to keep and hold fast what is already wrought of God's Nature and Likeness, that so we endanger not losing the Reward, that is so great worthy and durable, as there is no mention thereof to be made, it cannot be by Tongue or Pen declared. The Spirit expressly shows it, that no one can be excused from being proved and tried, by what can stir and rise out of the circumference of the Earthly Center, which will break out with all violence. But the steady Mind, through Faith and Love in God's Workmanship, shall overcome. For where the Foundation of God's *Sealing-Image* is found, it goes forth very strong. It is not only an invisible *Spirit*, but a Mystical Compacted *Body*, that has Divine Faculties and Powers to be its fortitude and guard, if wisely kept in exercise. What shall against it prevail?

### The Distinction of this Workmanship

[3F 17:20] §.But it may be queried by some, who may yet be as Strangers to this Inward Workmanship: *If it is such a singular framed Piece, as no other ingredients or matter in it is to be, but what is from the Divine Nature of JESUS, who is it to be attained to, and kept: and how is it to be distinguished and known from all other Workmanships?*

[3F 17:21] §.Ans. This is worth giving some Light of Evidence unto, according to Sound Judgment, in the Revelation of the Spirit, and the Witness-Feeling of this New Formation wrought in my own particular, through great Love-Benediction. For the Holy Watcher (who well knew what was wrought in me) did pronounce the Solemn Charge, that I should be all careful and vigilant to keep to the very end, what was *after God* thus wrought. Which Word extends not alone to me, but to all such, who upon examination, can find to be restored to them, the same Risen-Life of the Lord; Which will show itself to be God's own Workmanship, by what the Spirit demonstrates in these Particulars:

[3F 17:22] §.*First*: Hereby we know what is wrought *in God*: It is discoverable by an *Undoing* what is of the Serpently Seed, in conjunction with the Degenerated Nature, that took its Lapse or Descend from the First *Adam*. For now from this is brought forth a strange Evil and Sinful Birth. And while *that* lives, and acts its part, according to the Brutish Gross Sensuality, as the Offspring of the Earthly Image; there is no place for *God's Work* to be manifested. Therefore here comes, in order to Building, first throwing down, and Rooting and Razing up the accursed *Jericho*-Foundation. There is nothing to be spared hereof. Every Wild Plant of the Depraved Nature's properties is to be plucked up by an irreversible sentence. All, even all Old Things, are to be dissolved, in order to the New Creation: which of a clear, pure, and unmixed matter is to be the work of God again in the Creature. There must be a thorough Desolation upon the whole introduced principle, as it consists of the Out-Birth of a Rational Life that is deviated from the high principle of its Primitive Essence *in God*, before Time was. A Fiery Purgation of all this Evil Matter is that which precedes the Christ-Formation, as one entire Body and Spirit. Here is to be the true and total Death and Crucifixion of the stubborn potent Earthly-Birth: Which is decreed to a violent Death, by Him that said, Behold I come to make all New; and am come to do such a work, as shall differ from all works and workmanship, that are in this fallen creation.

[3F 17:23] §.*Second*: When thus the Accursed Thing is removed away, then a perfect New Birth is begotten of GOD, in a Virgin-Humanity, so fitted and prepared by that WORD, which calls that which is not in a Visible Matter, to be brought forth sublime, and highly Magical: according to the Creating-*Fiat*, that gives a God-Existency in a Formal Body; That after some space of time shall be changed into a subtle and refined Nature of Spirituality also, according as the Sapphire Flames of this pure Birth-Spirit work all through. Now this is the true evidence whereby we come to know the work to be of God, when only His Life and Nature clearly and fully acts us: and that all in us stands in Harmony and agreement thereunto; and whatsoever is averse and contrary is swallowed up into the Unity of this Heaven-born Life; That now in a Superior Nature manifests itself, in all, and every circumstance, according to the example of our Lord JESUS. Whose Workmanship we are, to accomplish (on this very Earth) the great works and deeds, that none other can do, but such as are new made and fashioned, do keep up this Spiritual Frame, until the comes Lord with His Reward.

**October 28, 1678**  
**The Jewel:**  
**or, the Thunder-bolt**

[3F 17:24] §.When I came out of my natural rest, and had recovered my spiritual sense, this Word came to me: *Did you know, or were able to comprehend, that only Jewel, which is lodged within the Deep of a Pure Heart, you would watch it day and night: to prevent all False Spirits that would betray it; though too heavy for them to take away.* Upon this Word it was brought to my remembrance that I did see in the night, a Stone: the fashion of it was like a *Thunder-Bolt*, but it was clear, and of a ruby and purple color: and it was shot down, as out of the Ethereal Heavens, and immediately caught up there again. This was interpreted to be the Jewel that lies in the pure and Heavenly Heart, against which there is such a continual conspiracy, because it is that Stone that will smite the image of the Beast so down, as no more to rise.

**October 29, 1678**  
**The Blood of the Covenant**

[3F 17:25] §. Thus spoke the *Blood-Laver*: Within you is your Life-Spring, that must keep the Holy and Separated place all pure. For the Book of the New Testament must open there, and be of great force, because dedicated by the *Life-Blood* of the Testator. Therefore look to it, for therein lies all the evidence for joint-heirship, with great Prince *Michael* in His Everlasting Kingdom. Then I heard this cry, Oh! The time is now at hand, wherein the True Tabernacle-Ministration will not only be known, but exercised by those who are purged by the *Covenant-Blood*, which remits all sin away. For no other priests can be in the Most Holy Tabernacle, but the holy, harmless, and undefiled, that are separated from Sin and Sinners, and do always wait upon the Great High-Priest within those Heavens that He is entered into, and now do call His own, who are under the Priestly Vow of Dedication.



## Chapter 18

October 30, 1678  
LEBANON

[3F 18:1] §.I heard a Word crying, Oh LEBANON, where are you to be found? Who knows your situation? Then suddenly the aspect of a desert-forest-like place presented itself, where only Inhuman Creatures did run up and down, answerable to the Wild Plants that grew there. Whereupon I looked on it in great sorrow and trouble, mourning to see ourselves, as cast upon this Desolate Place. I, being as in a Transical Sleep, prayed very vehemently to my Jesus, who was the object I was directed to. And from Him comfort did spring: For this Word proceeded from Him: Do not fear, you shall be ever left here: For a marvelous alteration will here come. Then a prospect appeared that was all of another kind: plants and birds that were white and blushing red, that budded forth, I knew not how. This put out the sight of the ruinous state which was so grievous. Then this Word came to me: As surely as you see this change, so shall it be in the Mystical Body, that will be turned from out of the Wild Nature into the *Sharon's* flourishing glory; for so it will well become the habitation of the Lord's residence, to see about Him such fruitfulness.

October 31, 1678  
The Seed of LEBANON

[3F 18:2] §.In and towards the morning, I heard a mighty cry thus uttered itself in these Words: The Great and Notable Day of the Lord is begun, and it will not end, till the Lord Christ come. Now all nations will put their hands to war against the Lamb, but as grass they shall wear away; for the strength of flesh shall be dried up as a potsherd. But look you well to it, you who are preserved to be the Seed of my New LEBANON-State, that you keep yourselves preserved, and mix not with the Seed of Men, who be those Wild Plants, that will suffer in the General Destruction: that will cut off many, before the *Sharon*-State will come to be more commonly and universally revealed.

[3F 18:3] §.Much more was shown me, too large to insert by writing: but our work and business is to preserve the Resurrection-Seed, which will manifest the *Glory* of LEBANON in its Firstfruits, as we keep close to the Mark, so we need not care, though the Earth be moved and overturned.

[3F 18:4] §.Then again, this Word came to me: Whoso has the Mind of Christ, it will be a Growing Treasure in Him, as the Book, in which the whole mind of God is revealed. Meditate thereupon, for it will make you wise for the undertaking of great and principal things; that will mightily prosper in your hand.

November 5, 1678  
The Fountain out of the Rock

[3F 18:5] §.As I was exercised in my mind, in and about the Heavenly Things, this came into me: I know it is a time of distress and perplexity, with them who are struggling against this Worldly Sea, that it might not overwhelm. But now it is also the time of God's Love, that will work all through for you. Be but vigilant, holding fast that piercing Engine of Faith, that the Rock of Strength may smite

to quench all fiery drought. *Which if it once be but opened, no fear, but this will follow as a Fountain Spring, while ye are journeying on, till ye come to pitch in LEBANON.*

**November 6, 1678**  
**The Love Chain**

[3F 18:6] §.THE Word this morning came to me: The *Love-Chain* is not to be unlinked between God and you, while the Spirit is the only eternal matter and quality. Therefore it will take hold so strongly, as to draw and fix within the circumference of the very immense *Love*, from which the enmity is separated. Oh enter into this *Love*, for this is the Infinite Space, which is beyond the *\*Third Gate*.

[3F 18:7] §.\*This invisible *Love-Chain*, will work through the *First Gate*, which is so strait and narrow, if you give all length and breadth within you, to wind you up there swiftly. For what is so strong as God's *Love*, for restoring into the desirable Fruition of all Plenty and Goodness.

[3F 18:8] §.[\*This refers to a Visional Representation called *The Magical Journey*, inserted in the *First Volume* [of the Diary]<sup>7</sup> which seems to belong to this place: or at least to have been now again revived, as it was afterward (a third time) in the Year 1696. For it plainly relates to the Manifestation of *Wisdom's Principle*, or of a *New LEBANON*, through the Mighty Powers of FAITH working by LOVE, in the *Philadelphian-State* now beginning. By which St. John is made to be the President of the Holy Magicians, or *Wise Men*: who above all others, has so excellently described this *Love*; and with the Vision of the 30th of the last month<sup>8</sup> most expressly agrees what is there written<sup>9</sup>. Afterward I was brought into a Barren Dry Ground, and this by the speaking forth only of a Word (as, Let this Soil be changed into a fruitful LEBANON) brought up all variety of pleasant flowers and plants, etc. See the Three Gates there described.]<sup>10</sup>

**November 10, 1678**  
**The Wilderness**

[3F 18:9] §.THE Heavenly Alarm sounded thus: Hear, Oh hear, you that are as in a Solitary Wilderness. Good tidings are verily brought from a Far Country to the Hearing-Ear of them, who are waiting in the Bride's Spirit. It is now but a short space before you will see your Redeemer. Whose Spirit as a Sign hereof travails in you, as a Woman that is pained to be delivered; Faint not, for it is a Lordly Birth that will bring rejoicing, and the Heavens will fly away. Then I had a sight of high Water-Floods, that made a great noise, but a Word came: Fear none of these things. Keep in the Secret Desert still, till the Bridegroom shall bring out the Clothing from the Heavenly Sphere. Be only watchful, and your Defense will not depart, but rest with you, in the times of an *Universal Desolation*, that hastens apace. In the midst of which, the Lord will appear for His own Elect.

**November 12, 1678**  
**A Call into the Vineyard**

[3F 18:10] §.This morning it was first spoke to me: Consider that this is no time to stand idle in the Market-Place. Here is a Vineyard-Work to do, to trim and dress, that you may not be found empty

---

<sup>7</sup> SDV Note: Original book: Fountain of Gardens, Vol. 1, Nov. 7, 1678, pg. 53. SDV reference: 1F 2:18-30.

<sup>8</sup> SDV Note: October 30, 1678.

<sup>9</sup> SDV Note: Original book: Fountain of Gardens, Vol. 1, Nov. 7, 1678, pg. 62, Line 13. SDV reference: 1F 2:28.

<sup>10</sup> SDV Note: Three Gates. SDV 2F 2:18.

Vines, without the Spirit of Wine in your Cluster-Grape. For it is that which must give Vigor and Strength against the *Evil Day*, when you will see faintings of Heart and Spirit everywhere.

**November 13, 1678**  
**The Angelical Key**

[3F 18:11] §.As the Spiritual exercise of my mind was consulting upon the now approaching Day of God, which will be so terrible to Flesh, I cried, Oh my Lord, who shall live in this Day, when you shall contend with all Nations, and pour out Indignation? What can secure these Bodies at such a time, that are obnoxious to the common slaughter? My mind being deeply plunged herein, that it was now all needful to know, what might be trusted to, where all things were like to be in confusion, as to the Visible Forms of things, throughout the whole creation. The Heavenly Wise will consider all this, and lay it up in their Hearts, from those Warning-peals, that are rung in our Ears. And truly the Morning-Watch is set, and makes discovery, that the Spoiler and Breaker of Nations, will make way for Christ's Kingdom, the fore-running violence must be suffered. But this Word came to me: Be not dismayed, whose Lives are growing out of the Vine-root. You shall still spread out in Fruitfulness within the unknown Walls, wherein you shall walk without fear.

[3F 18:12] §.After this entire conference, and night-repose, I had the Representation of a Mold, that was fashioned for a *Key*, and there was a Liquour of Gold color poured upon it. And it was of the same impression that I saw of the Mold; it was very clear and curiously wrought, that you might see through, as if it had been Glass. Then was it in the Hand of one in an Angelical Form, who poured the Liquor, that gave the form of the *Key*, and spake: This is such *Key*, as has not been entrusted with any, but Him who has been the Former and Fashioner of it, who only knows the use thereof, and has the donation thereof to give. No *Key* but what is of this make can unlock the Gate of God's deep and immense Heart of Love. The Wards are so fine, and intrinsically wrought, that the *Key* must answer in every winding hereunto. No imitated or Counterfeited *Key* can turn in this Threefold Spring-Lock.

[3F 18:13] §.Then I hereupon made supplication to receive this *Key*, to open God's Heart withal. And it was answered me: This was but to show me, that after this manner and kind, there is a *Key* to be Cast, within the Secret of your Dwelling, for its appointed use.

[3F 18:14] §.Then was it further opened unto me, that all of the Heavenly Matter was to be separated, in a way of high extraction by the Celestial Fire, and the Mold cast and formed anew by the Finger of God, and the Spirit's Liquor to be poured forth. And this is the Gift of this mighty *Key* that should open and bring forth that of God, which never yet was manifested since the Earth was. The Spirit said: The Knowledge was reserved, till the Mold in Nature should be wrought. But it was assured me, that the Mold was already cast in some known to the Lord: And that the Pure Matter was upon its Separation. Which when refined enough, this Mystical *Key* would soon be run. For there would come such a Time and Age, as would be so hurtful, as nothing but this Opening *Key* can secure out of Wicked Hands. For it is shown me very obviously, that there will be a Chosen Generation reserved, to be wrought out, to do actual Wonders, to save and deliver from the Serpently Seed, which have grown as unsavory Weeds over the whole Face of the Earth. Therefore let us try in that Method-Deep, that may enter us Great Magicians to form this *Key*. This will be all-worthy to advance and bring in Vast Treasures, with which we may be profitable to those, for whom the Lord shall hereby unlock His Deity.

[3F 18:15] §.[This Vision is a more distinct revival of a former one, that was given several years before, and is already published in the *First Volume* of this *Diary*, titled, *The Key of the Great Mystery*; **11** Which ought therefore to be compared with this.]

**November 14, 1678**  
**The Line of the Spirit**

[3F 18:16] §.A Deep Fathoming Line was presented unto me, that was as a round bottom wound up, only some part of it was unwound towards me. It was twisted with various colors, white, purple and red. And the Word that given was: *Follow this Line as it unwinds, and it will lead through all Worlds, which are necessary to know and understand.* This did Figure out the unfathomed bottom of the Spirit, that invites the Spirit of our Souls to travel with Him, as its companion, to know and see, what are in the *Spiritual Worlds*; as knowing we have the attractive matter, that may co-mix and gather in of its own, where ever it comes: This pertaining to the making up the Heavenly Celestiality, in all high Spiritual accomplishments.

[3F 18:17] §.But the Query was put to me: *Who can follow this unfathomed Line of the Spirit through all heights, depths, and breadths, and not look back to the basest and lowest of all Worlds, as is this, in which Mortals do live?*

[3F 18:18] §.*Ans.* High worthy Souls they are, who are able to forget and forsake the place, where the Outward Life has sprung, as a natural Plant from the gross Earth, so to permit and suffer itself to be plucked up, and planted in another Sphere. What can more testify the Heart towards God to be single and clear, resolving to go forwards as this twisting Line shall lead? Whose colors do make the way both pleasant and light: Which signifies the united Power of the Deity. To whose conduct, we may commit our Spirits without fear or scruple, as not asking where it will fix us. Because we know and are persuaded, it will bring us into those infinite Love-joys, and freedoms, where a setting down will be in an Eternal Rest.

[3F 18:19] But now we must consider, that yet we are many removes from that place, where Pre-existence of Spirits is, who know nothing of a moldering Body, before this World was. To which Seraphic dignity the Line of the Spirit would again Center us, if any shall agree to adventure to be His Companion and Fellow-Traveler. Whether smooth or rough *Seas*, whether Hills or Dales he must pass: yet resolving in himself to fall and rise with His Guide through all and every vicissitude. Because of the confidence the Spirit of the Soul has in his Guide, that He will search, and bring through all Kingdoms; till he finds the Pre-existence of his own Spiritual Immortal Being. And thereby be advantaged by the additional supplies of what was lacking, while confined within the circumference of a Mortal World, within and without himself. Which while shut up in the Prison-House of a Mortal-Nature, no sight of Invisible Things in the high Sphere can possibly be.

[3F 18:20] Therefore as the Spirit's Line unwinds, we are wound up from the Low Valley of this Terrestrial State, to heights where none can see our walks, because covered and environed with Heavenly Clouds all about: Which will part us from all those Inhabitants that dwell in these Earthly Cells. None but such High Mounted Spirits can tell the Secrets of the Higher Worlds, and they only are called up there to dwell. Though at the breaking off from these low and interior Constitutions of Beings, it may be grievous at first, yet the Holy Inspirator faithfully assures us, there are infinite profits and advantages that will attend us herein. For by this our Spiritual Travels, high improve-

---

**11** SDV Note: Original Book: Fountain of Gardens, Vol 1, August, 1670 (?), pg. 22. SDV reference: 1F 1:7-9.

ments will be made in Knowledge and Experiences, as we pass through the Heavenly Countries, as learning the languages, Fashions, Departments, Habits, and Mystical Arts. All which may be of high and wonderful use, to honor and bring in such increase to our Lord and Master's use, that we shall be reckoned no more Unprofitable Servants; but Faithful and Wise, to be evermore employed in those more high affairs, that we may be learned as Seraphics. *O dear Spirit, stretch our your Line, that we may see our way to act in those high degrees.*

**November 20, 1678**  
**The Sovereignty of the Will**

[3F 18:21] §.I was in the ejaculations of an inspired mind, proposing to my God and Father, somewhat that might free my Outward Life from all kinds of servility. For which I did know, I had a Single Eye, to show forth the hidden born-Life, that might carry Majesty everywhere with it, and not to stoop to inferior things. Upon which I had a Word come in, saying: The Eye of God well sees and reads what is in your Heart, as to this particular, wherein you have been long proved. But a Medicine is preparing that will redeem from it. But the cry of the high Spiritual Will must run with great terror, as a Principal Ingredient hereunto, crossing and bearing down those many contrary willings that have taken their Birth from the Constellations of the Elementary World. That has bound the Hands of Faith in the powerful Will-Spirit, that nothing wrought or produced could be, beyond the circling course of Reason's Production. But now take good heed this advice from the Light Element, and its fixed Star, as the Medicinal cure for it. Which I was instigated to write as the Matter to me was given in, concerning these high, and also these low-born-*Wills*.

[3F 18:22] §.First consider what the ground is, from which the various Wills proceed, which bears up the force of them, that makes them so pregnant. And now to begin with the many Wills, that are generated from the outward Life-Birth: They all spring from the common senses, which brings in those pleasant pictures, and beget an *imaginariness* in the mind, which is the proper ground of the many springing Wills. Which inferior Will goes forth to effect what the Birth-Ground of the rational Life sets before it, as to the honors, profits, and pleasures of it. Each hungry Will pursues these, and through the Strong Earthly Magic of it does them effect. As we see the worldly hunting *Esaus*, what Venison do they get, and what spoil and prey they daily catch, through the violent pursuit of the Will, that thrust forward to obtain all that, which promises a present fading tranquility.

[3F 18:23] §.*Object*. But now this may be objected: *Can the Will abstractively carry on all that the mind designs? Not so: for we see that in all Degenerated Births, that Will nothing beyond a Terrestrial World, yet they come short of what they Will into?*

[3F 18:24] §.*Ans*w. As answer to this, it is thus given me to untie this Knot: That whereas some natural Persons, in the natural Acts of their Will, do find the stop of that Wheel, that it will not turn to bring about that for which it moves so strongly: So there must be somewhat which lets the same. But now what is it that lets? Or what can stop the Wise and Holy Creator? Since the Outward Spirit is fallen into this gross outward Elementary Body, the Earthly Will is now bounded by a Superior Power, that God has given way unto: that may check and control the Will, if it does not agree with the Rules and Constitutions of the Starry Region, and with the Prince that rules there. Which is the sad effects of our Spirits coming into these Elementary Bodies, to be under this Curb and Astral Dominion. So that those who are not freed hereout, though they have a resolute strong Will, yet they must be in an intrinsical league and combination with the working Power of the Stars, before their Wills can fully sway in the Outward Matters of this World. Therefore no one thing of more consequence to

be sought after, than to have that nullified, and made void, which is formed and wrought through the conjunction of the Starry Heavens, wherein lies the Venomous Strife.

[3F 18:25] §.But it will be objected: *That cannot be, without the Annihilation of the Elementary Body.* §.Answer: Then how was it with our Lord Jesus, who carried the same Body as we do: but nothing touched Him of that kind? But it may be said, He was an extraordinary Person. But though He was, yet for that end He was manifested, that so He might not stand alone in the Superior Birth, that could not be touched with the Poison of the Outward Elements: but gather a known Number, that should share in the self-same superiority over the Starry Region. Out from which the Redemption will show itself, through the springing might of the Heaven-born Will, taking hold of the Celestial Planet's power, as its true Mother-Life, which will bring aid, to pass every purpose and determination that is formed in the Will-Spirit; riding over the Heads of all the contradicting Wills, that are from Astral Birth.

[3F 18:26] And truly we may take up Lamentation and say, The whole World lies yet rocked asleep in this Enchanted Bed, and know not, neither consider, that the Will-Spirit, in compliance with the Stars, is now become their driver, and how hard is it to discern them, from the puttings forth of the Spirit, and his divine and unmixed willings: Which are agitated from a higher Constellation, that anything of this Outward Birth can pretend to. Yet into this, if there be not a wise and clear Discerning-Spirit, the Stars will very readily come in to mingle: because we are in such Bodies, as do carry their signature. For which cause the living Word, that is sharp and powerful to search and divide between Life and Life, Spirit and Spirit, Will and Will, has to me appeared, to give the true understanding and right character of what is Willed from the pure Celestial Essence, as it comes naked and abstracted from God: and what puttings forth there are from the Outward Birth, that is, from the Stars: Also what adulteratings there may possibly be, where there is a formation of a Christly Birth, yet obnoxious to the ruffling of the restless Stars.

[3F 18:27] §.Whereupon the Spirit gives this Counsel: That whoever is once mounted upon the Horse of the pure abstracted Will, that they be so watchful, as not to be plucked down again with the Infectious Stars, but keep up the authority, and tread down those many thwarting Spirits, that will thrust to overthrow the Horse and Rider; Which must keep pace together, till they have clean passed into their own Eternal Element to obtain a full confirmation; which the Constellations of this World cannot alter, nor ever mingle withal. When once it is thoroughly Baptized with the Fiery Element, which fixes the Birth of the Holy Ghost, then it will nourish itself, from its own Fountain-Life, and will grow so strong, as to resist the Starry Constellations, where have been the long strife. For the Kingdom of God is all *Harmony*: and it puts forth in *one entire* Will, that reconciles Heaven and Earth together. Which being once brought to pass, the rich Land of BEULAH, with all its Rich Golden Mountains, will soon break open, as the unexhausted Bank that supplies the High-Born Will with all sufficiencies. So that the Proverb may cease, that *to will is present*: but such War and Strife there is, that the Will is left Naked without Power to effect. But blessed is that Light, that has given us understanding, to know what it is that we must clothe our Wills withal, that so they may become Impregnable to carry all before them.

[3F 18:28] §.The *First Rule*: That we clear the House of Nature of all those striving Wills, against this one interior Will, which opens purely, and distinctly from the Birth of the Holy Ghost. We are not to delude ourselves, as we do too universally, saying, That there is an allowance for Impotency, that cannot move the Wheel of God's Omnipotency. For this we are lawfully to contend, till we arrive to the Superiority in God's own Will that may bring in all to bow. That Variety may come into the

Unity, and no more be at odds. And this is the work the Holy Spirit now sets us upon, that so our Warfare may come to an end, and we be redeemed out of the Jarring Elements, under which we have suffered.

[3F 18:29] §. The *second Rule* is: That as we clear off all scores and obligations, as pertaining to the Astral Birth: So henceforth to be still raising and stirring up those Powers of Love, and exercising those high floating Acts of Faith, that may forcibly attract the Super-Celestial Planets, that our Will-Spirits may run into a near and high conjunction with them, as they move in their course. And from this we are to expect our true Medicinal Healing and Tranquility of Life, with all successive blessings: That may infinitely outvie, what from the Starry Region has been given to their Children. Now for the obtaining this more high and wonderful Dowry, we must remember that no divided Will must remove us, but we must ascend in the *one* strait line of the Spirit: neither must our Eyes look two ways; for while it is so, we are in the demur, and then God is left free, whether or not to entail or settle the Celestial Inheritance, from *Beulah-Land*. But could we come up to a clear simplified Willing, trusting thereinto, confiding and expecting our income from no other hand; the Lord of this Eternal Heavenly Region, stands charged and obliged, according to our trust and belief, to make performance, out of His Infinite Stores.

[3F 18:30] Oh, who can raise and keep up upon the Flying Wing this High-Born Will, that it may flag no more, nor be beaten down with the pelting Stars, that are shot in from the Great Prince of this Region? *Now, O Lord Jesus, let all his Constellations fall as untimely Fruit: that he may find no more in us, which he may call his own. So we shall rise in Victory over all of his Kingdom.*

## Chapter 19

December 1, 1678

### Letter and Spirit: The Vision of a Roll

[3F 19:1] §.IN the Night-Watch, as I was in a Resting Trance, there was held out to my view a Paper-roll, and I could read the Inscription of the first part, which was in these Words: Greeting from the Prince of Love and Peace to you, and the same in Life-Union with God in Nature. Behold and read the Articles that will reconcile the outward and inward Birth. Then the Roll folded up and passed away. Then I said, *Lord how shall I read what is taken away?* But it was answered me, *So it must be.* To signify the Letter-Inscription may vanish and be snatched away: but the Spirit is at hand to Imprint it fresh and new in such a Book, as the Lord's own Seal shall witness to it; in that you will review what was specified in the Roll, and what the Springing Book of Life in your hidden ground puts forth, as your Eye may be quick for to spy it, and waiting for the Eye-Salve to discover it.

December 2, 1678

### The Interpretation of the Vision

[3F 19:2] §.THE Vision of the Roll, was again held out; part of which I read, and the other could not: but it was taken up again out of sight, which concealed matter my Spirit was much inquisitive about; watching when the Book would open, that I might see and read, what did then withdraw. Where upon an Introversion did seize upon me. Then did the Anointing bring up the whole matter, and repeated it to me. The sum of which was: That the *Gentile* Nature was called to be made partaker of the Covenant of Promise, which the Inward Birth of the Spirit did enjoy, and to be a Fellow Heir with Him, to whom also pertains the Adoption, and the access to the Oracle: And to be Baptized for the Remission of Sins, through the penetrating Fire of the Holy Ghost, that would give the perfect renewing of Sanctification throughout.

[3F 19:3] For the outward *Gentile*-Nature is that outward Body of Flesh, that is thus to be made a pure *Nazarite*, before Christ in Spirit can work His mighty works of Wonder. The Apostle *Paul* did very clearly see into this Great Mystery when he cried: Who shall deliver from this old Creaturely Body, where Sin and Death do reign? Which he, and others, who had the Firstfruits of the Spirit, did groan under. Who though through the Spirit of their Inward Man, they did subject the outward, and mortify the Earthly Members of it: Yet this was a step too short. Something else is to be expected: only this is to make way for a further change. For while the Old Creaturely Spirit and Body remains in its earthliness, and is only subjected, contrary to its own propensity, it is in pain and uneasy, while not changed into the Life and Being of what is clearly spirituality.

[3F 19:4] For true it is, the supernal Will of the Heavenly Born Man may yoke him, and may impose the very same Laws, that he himself has received from God: But they cannot be so grateful nor pleasant, till he be changed and renewed in the Spirit of his Mind also. Which the wise and understanding Spirit that is gone through the work of Regeneration in himself, presses for: and being an abstracted Spirit (that wants a meet-help in a fit organical Body to work through), begins now to consider how in all friendly amiableness, to gain the free and voluntary force of his Will-Spirit, to unite in all Points and *Articles*, that the Lord Jesus has commanded to His Own, that are Begotten accord-



ing to the *Will of the Father*; Which Points and *Articles of Faith* are accordingly to be set before the Outward Man, for his agreement thereunto. For he must be the active Agent: for the Spirit of the inward Man without the outward, cannot bring forth into Manifestation the working Powers, without there be unity of Love and Will. For that gives life and courage, and strength to resist what will make their attempts from the Satanical Kingdom.

[3F 19:5] §.Now then the *First Work* the New Man goes upon is: To offer a test to the Outward Man, whether he will renounce the Traditions and Laws, that he has been all his life trained up in obedience to, and that are so agreeable to the Mortal Essences in which he lives? Now he must disclaim, whatever relates to this; abrogating the very Birth of outward depraved Nature, that consists in the strife of the Four Elements. It may well be objected: *This is a hard pluck to bring the Rational Spirit unto*. But so deeply has the Love and Wisdom of God impressed this already upon the Spirit that is Born from the Trinity, that he cannot be at rest, till he draws the Outward Man also to become One in this Golden Link with the Deity. Which will be the greatest Wonder that ever was or shall be wrought: for it is the Salvation that will reach to the end of Man's Earth. And in truth the reason why the Outward Man has remained as an Outcast, and an *Unbeliever*, is because it has been generally received that there was no such necessity for his Salvation: his Birth being from the Stars, and there he must expire again. But we well know, his Root is deeper, and may arrive to his first Original, Paradisical Nature.

[3F 19:6] §.Then *Secondly*: Why so few in this Outward Birth have reached hereunto, is because the Inward First Birth has been but feeble and weak, and has not been strong to overcome all temptations, and trials; as not standing firm in the Faith without staggering. For till he is fully persuaded and satisfied, in all the points that tend to the overturning of the worldly forms, worships, and constitutions of things, after a creaturely manner; I say, (or rather the Holy Anointing does aver), the illuminated Spirit is no fit Agent, to work upon the Corporeal Subject: And that too, till he has gone through the whole process of Renovation and Sanctification, and has passed through the purging Fire of the Holy Ghost. That so the pure tinging Gold may have its Springing-Laver within him: Which will keep the inward part as a clear Crystal Stream.

[3F 19:7] And this will make the Inward Ground rich in all Fruitfulness, for a Daily Offering to Him, from whom the Life-Seed was cast in. Which is so pleasant, that He permits the Outward Man to partake thereof, as a Joint-Heir in Spiritual things: upon a solemn protest against all of the Earthly Kingdom. And when to this he is brought over, then further it is agreed upon by the High Council of the Holy Trinity, to tender the Sacred Covenant, wherein are contained the high *Articles of Faith*, that the Spiritual Man has signed and subscribed his name to, which are filed and recorded in God's Life-Will. Upon which a Commission is given to try the Outward Man with the same, that if he will mutually comply, then he shall be saved from the Mortal Destruction, which otherwise will come unavoidably upon him.

**December 3, 1678**  
**The Proclamation of the New Creation**

[3F 19:8] §.THE Word of Life thus opened in me, and said: O hail you New-Born Spirit; and consider well to what a point you are come. You are come indeed to a work of great consequence: Which is to Preach the Gospel of Salvation throughout the ends of your own Earth: for the gathering in your dispersed and scattered Properties; which have not known who their Redeemer is. *Proclaim, I say, proclaim liberty upon the acceptation of the New Covenant-Terms, that were specified in the*

*Roll that came down, which shall be renewed again by the Spirit of Revelation.* Then entered my Mind into a very deep stillness, to hear what would be further disclosed concerning this matter. Then was brought to my remembrance a Figure that some few days past I saw in Vision: Which was a Swift moving Body, distinct without me, that went up and down, but did not touch the ground, but circled round in an ascending motion towards the Invisible Heights. This was said to be the Figure of the New Creaturely Form, that the Outward Man was to be turned into, which would free him from the accursed Evil, and bring him into the *Angelical liberty*.

[3F 19:9] What greater Motive can be presented to enforce a Renunciation of the Old Creaturely Life, that lies open to the disquieting Elements, which will still make war, where corporeal matter is found? Therefore turn in, O Man of the Earth, to your Original Ground, where the Gospel-Sound cries loud again, and calls the whole Outward Man to pursue this. For help is laid upon the Anointed Prophet within for this very end, who has the Horn of Oil to anoint withal: That what is Natural may become Spiritual; according to that Celestial Figure that was again renewed to my view. Which I had lightly passed over, had not the Holy Ghost set it before me again: and showed me, that in like manner, such a Modeled Body, all-Spirit in matter, should act the High Magia of God's Wonders in the Seraphic Circle; into which nothing of Human Birth can move.

[3F 19:10] Then followed this Visional Word, saying, A great overturn! Who can understand, but he who seeks to be unclothed from the creeping Beast of Mortality, and to be clothed upon with the Life-Immortality; Who walks and moves, and yet does not touch this ground, from which those Death-Vapors do spring, that have infected the Inhabitants that dwell thereupon. Come up, O Spirit; and with your Magical Breath, draw in your own Co-essential Matter, for a Clothing of Life: and so Harmonize in moving Power with Pure Seraphics.

### **December 4, 1678** **The Angelical Articles**

[3F 19:11] §.After this there was presented a Fiery-Circle-Life, to which the Child in Stature did move, and ascended from it to the upper Sphere. But from within the Circle I was called to look upon it, and there it was written all within with Letters of Flames, the matter of which was repeated, though I could not read it. The Living Word signified, that therein was the Life-Articles of Faith, higher than which the very Angels could not proceed to live unto. Then said I, *Ah Lord, what is this to a Spirit that has not put off his Mortal Nature, and put on an Angelical Habit? Answ.* Yes, it concerns the Inferior Man very much: who by receiving in this Engraving Love, may hereby attain to such a Transparent Figure, the consistency of which is raised through the Conformity to these *Angelical Articles*; which were specified in these particulars.

[3F 19:12] §.The *1st Article* is to believe that the Everlasting God, that once formed man in perfect and pure nature, will restore him to the same again. But this not as a Creator distinct from that of His own essence; which yet remains with us: but in (and through) that He will be the moving power, to raise up from the Center-Circle the *disappeared* Image, or Figure, that it may then be most excellent and glorious in holiness, in every part.

[3F 19:13] §.The *2nd Article* is to own and to know no other God, but this God that can introduce His own Undivided Property into the Divided, as to reconcile, and make the creature One Entire Body of Spirituality, agreeing with Christ, in every part, who is the Head Principality.

[3F 19:14] §.The *3rd Article* is, we are to believe that this Eternal working Property is all-sufficient to provide for us, without interfering or touching with the Mortal Essences: under the Dominion of the Starry Region. For the Outward birth shall be freed from that bondage of corruptibility, through the Baptizing Flame of the Pure Deity: Which is so diffusive through the Whole Man, as to make it all Angelical, to cut off all occasion of dependencies, as to corporeal subsistence, Which the Gross Earthly Man has cleaved so fast unto, as the Life of his Life. Which in this New Model, we shall see, and certainly feel, broken; as the fiery Law of the Spirit works through all Nature's Properties. Then will that faithful saying of our Lord be made good: *Behold, I am come to make all things new*: This is to be made every whit whole.

[3F 19:15] §.Except we assent unto these Articles jointly in the Twofold Nature, and except we subscribe to this New *Angelical Creed*, we cannot expect to become Transfigured Creatures, and so to be set free from all powers and dominions of this world, bearing the Figure and Body of the *Angelical World*. For this the True and Faithful Witness has testified, asserting a possibility to those who can give credit to these Truths, and be Practitioners in them. O Lord help our Faith, we pray you.

[3F 19:16] §.[To this Angelical Creed may be referred *The Twelve Degrees* (or Articles) of Faith, in order to the attainment of the Divine Magia, or Theosophical Art, which are taught in the Revelation of the Tree of Faith springing up in the Paradise of GOD; as the distinct Branches, Fruits and Properties of that Magical Tree, exhibited to the Eye of the Spirit. The comparing of which together possibly may not be unserviceable to the student of this Royal Science.]<sup>12</sup>

### December 5, 1678 The New Tent Erected

[3F 19:17] §.THE Word thus sprung: As the Lord your God has quickened and strengthened His own Life-Birth, to make it a Prophet and Seer deep, so a meet Tabernacle must be renewed for it: That a True Witness may rise to testify that which has been as a Sealed Book; So that he that runs may read what will be Engraved upon the forefront of the new Creature. For a Holy *Tent* is to be erected for the New Creature, all-Glorious throughout; because it is to be of a Threefold Spirituality, extracted from the Deity.

[3F 19:18] A Body must be, whose matter is of such a composition, as the Root and Ground of the Spirit that is from Eternity; that had its Pre-existence in the *Abyssal Deep*, before Nature was figured forth in *Paradise*. So that there is a more High Dignified Body, which our Lord Jesus has now put on from the Divine Essentiality: which was what the Lord had, before He came to take up our human form. For He prays for the Glory, that He had with the Father *before the World was*, as a distinct Person. Who having this reassumed as a Light-Generating Body, will henceforth multiply into Life-Figures of Glory, that shall every way equalize the Original Matter, from which Spirits have their Existencies. The distinction of Body and Spirit shall cease. For there shall be but one entire activity in the Ghostly might, that will make the Body as penetrating as the Spirit. This and much more was opened and revealed from the *Transparent Child-like Stature* that appeared in such a swift circling-motion unto me in the Vision, which brought this Mystery to light.

---

<sup>12</sup> SDV Note: See Tree of Faith, Chapter 12, SDV.

**December 7, 1678**  
**Contraries Reconciled**

[3F 19:19] §.THE conjunction of the Two Natures, which have been so *contrary* to each other, now being upon reconciling did give a refreshing hope, that the Restoration would be fully accomplished in the Threefold Perfect Degree, that might free both Body and Spirit. Being cast into a deep contemplation hereof, the Similitude of a Tree was set before me, that was Barren, Dead, and Dry, as we do see in Winter, no covert of beauty; But in the Spring a fresh clothing there is and fruitfulness, that makes it quite another thing. That which was as dead, lives again. So it was applied the outward Sinful Man was as this Dead Tree. But the Spirit Life of Jesus was that which did incorporate, and so gave the Old Withered Body a new Fresh Clothing; sending up from the pure inward ground of the God-Head-Springs, that Living Water, that was for the uniting the force and power of the divided property, to concenter again in one Spiritual and Celestial Body.

**December 15, 1678**  
**The School of Wisdom: A Transportation**

[3F 19:20] §.IN the night after my first sleep, I was consulting, whereunto the Moving-Star had brought us, and perceiving it still was in its circling motion (to show that we had not yet arrived to the Center-point, where we might mix with it, and cease from all further searching and travel) I was longing now to be at rest in the Lord, from all sorts of Toil and Labor, both Internal and External. But it was replied by the Holy Ghost, who has God's Secrets in readiness to reveal, that there could not be so quick a dispatch. For we were, said He, but newly entered upon the borders of the Unknown Land, where the Heavenly City stands, in which each one have their allotted Mansion reserved. And being cast into a solitary and mourning posture, because of this Word that declared for a continual warfare, I was in some kind of agony.

[3F 19:21] In the sense hereof I queried: What the Lord would further require, now that the *Contrarieties* in Nature were agreed to walk in the narrow track of the Spirit unanimously? Upon which expostulation, the Spirit revealed that it was now the fittest Season to proceed forward in: For none could be capable of taking their Degrees in order to a Seraphic Dignity, but those who had reconciled the striving properties, which from the Outward Birth had made such a struggling. Which (being not only subdued, but made all willing) now must together launch into further depths, as the Star above shall direct the *Measuring Line* in the Spirit's Hand: Which we are precisely to observe; and all will work to fetch up to God's Rest.

[3F 19:22] §.Then after all this opening and Spiritual Parley, I was overset, and cast as into a *Trance*, and had all my Outward Senses drowned, and was brought by the Spirit into such a place, that was as the scene of Another World. For the Ground where the Inhabitants moved, was as clear as Crystal and the same above was the same below all light and clear. The Spirit that brought me, in led me to do obeisance to one that was the *Princess* of that World: Who appeared great and full of Majesty, resembling the Face of a Woman, all clothed as in waved Clouds. I was something abashed to come near her: but the Spirit animated me. And she directed my Guide to bring me into acquaintance with the residue that did move there in distinct Figures. But they at first looked somewhat strange upon me, and shy: because I had no such Clarified Body. Whereupon I did strive to make my apology in way of speech: but that did much displease. For it was advised, this was the *Magia-School*; where all of Mortal Language was to be excluded. For all was understood by the operation of the *Magia*: here was no Speech, but all Power acted.

[3F 19:23] Then one I was brought to, that had such Composure in his countenance, as one might read profound wisdom signally resident upon him. I would have had them more free, and familiar with me, for I loved, and was much affected with them. But they saw I was not versed in their High Method, and looked upon me as a stranger in their region. And being very eager to ask them questions: What the denominated were? And who was the Sovereign Ruler here? And I was big with many queries, but received a check, as being a Young Novice, that did not understand the Magia-Rules. Then suddenly I was bound, and could move no way, but no Hand touched me. And this was to let me know what Sovereignty they could put forth. And then suddenly I was set free, and found myself at liberty.

[3F 19:24] §.Then I heard the Majestical Princess, that ruled all in that sphere, say in a breath as soft as air: *Do not despise the Unlearned, that are not acquainted with this High Art. For this thing, time is allowed, for the fitting her out thereunto. But know, O Spirit, before you go from here, that this is the one only thing that is worthy to be learned, whereby Nature's Beast may become tamed, and to a Heavenly Figure renewed by the Magia-working Power.*

[3F 19:25] Then I was brought into my bodily sense, where I was given to understand what all this transportation tended to. Which I was cautioned to remind, and lay up as a secret: and watch the turn of the Wheel, when *Sophia* should it once again move, to bring us to know and learn this High Mystery, which may relieve the groaning creation.

### December 18, 1678 The Angelical Philosophy

[3F 19:26] §.AS I stood upon the Watch-tower of the silent mind, this Word of Counsel came. O Spirit, whose Ear is opened to Hear, be then a Wise Pilot, and well-govern the Ship and Bark of your visible Creaturely Nature. For upon this Coast you are not to stay, an *Holy Island* is provided for you. Therefore take the opportunity, when the Fiery Gust, and Airy Breath move high: Then this heavy Ship away may fly to that place which is very nigh to God your Father; Who has appointed to you one that is learned in the highest Mystery of the Ghostly Magia: that in the Sequestration of your Mind, you may be taught the *Angelical Philosophy*. Which is a New Science, that has not been scarce by any fathomed. But there is a Decree Sealed, for Wisdom's Children to be brought up in these high Magical Arts. Therefore put in for your part: and regard no other thing; for this will give great pre-eminence above all that can be uttered; for it is a restoring to the Celestiality of that Kingdom, to which you have been Alienates. But now mind your calling, and be courageous to draw off from the Shore of all Mortal Things, which have been as a Door that has hung upon a wrong and heavy Hinge, to shut out of Wisdom's Magia-Spring, which in the *Holy Island* runs all free.

## Chapter 20

December 19, 1678  
The Theosophical Eye

[3F 20:1] §.THE working motion of the Magia-Circle, I did feel in a strong driving into an Abyssal Deep. And there was presented unto me an *Eye*, from which went forth bright Beams of Light, which had a wonderful attractive power to draw the Spirit of my Soul into it, as the Center of Wisdom's Light, and vast comprehension, which must expose itself to the Infinitum of all Beings. And it was said to me: Now you are to be tried, whether you can leave all visibilities, and come to live in this *Theosophical Eye*: which can generate all kind of Working Powers, that may cast the Model of the New Creation. Then replied my Spirit, How shall I, who am in Mortality, possibly be able to live in this Bright Circling Eye? Although my Will unfeignedly hereunto aspires, yet I cannot find the way that may fix me here; neither can I come so suddenly to such an Abnegation, as to forget and forsake my own Creaturely Being.

### The Essence of Love and the Magia-Rules

[3F 20:2] Then said the Inbreathing Word: There is an Essence of Love that may constrain you to come up to all the Magia-Rules. Although, yet the way seems uncouth, and as incredible for you to pass into this *Eye*, as a Camel into the Eye of a Material Needle. But know that the Time is now come about, in which the Father of Magical Spirits will put those of His own Immediate Line unto it: For hereby the world shall know the True Engraving of God's Name. Which inscription may carry a Life-Forcing Power, to out-do that speculation of images, conceived in the mind, which lies bare and void of the Ghostly Might, which the Heart of Christ longs earnestly to drive forth into Manifestation. And therefore He sent out Glances from the Eternal *Eye*, that we might our way espy, and come to be the Fruitful Branches of the Magical Tree. For the accomplishing of which, these Rules following were expressed by the Master of this High Art.

[3F 20:3] §.The First Rule given out was, that henceforth, we *unlearn* and *unknow* all which the wise Rational Spirit has in its refined morality disciplined, and exercised our Senses in, making a fair show in the mixed complexion of Darkness and Light, Evil and Good. All which we are to disavow, and to alter the whole property, for this cause: In that by this Spirit, we have been taught to join *Baal* with the one only God, and to bow down to the Sun, Moon, and Stars, that have but their subordinate government in this visible Principle, under JEHOVAH. Who has not bound those, who are His Offspring under a Law of Necessity, to have recourse to these Inferior Powers, for those conveniences that are to Succor the Out-Birth Life of the Elementary Nature with. Although the whole world in general has learned no other Philosophy: the Just and Righteous, and those who are in no work of Regeneration, mutually agree in this matter, to fetch in their life-subsistence, from the ruling motion of the Stars. But God would that we (who stand in the Election of the Love) should learn and understand another way, in which we may command both Sun, Moon, and Stars, and break their bands.

### Marks of those who Learn the Heavenly Philosophy

[3F 20:4] §.But it may be replied: *Where is the Man or Woman that could fly above their Region?* True it is, we are ignorant in this our present Age of any such, though I doubt not, but some there may be in this very time, though unknown. But I am assured that the time is come, when the Starry-Birth shall break away by the Magia-Wheel, when once it does but touch. Then we shall see that marvelous thing, as Dark and Heavy Iron upon the Water to float and swim. And though this Magia-School has been shut up, and the Magical Children, who thereunto do belong, have had a long Holy Day, wherein time has been loitered away; now the idle time is over. The high Theosophical Eye runs to and fro to attract and gather up them, who are apt to learn Heavenly Philosophy, who know by several marks who may attain hereunto.

[3F 20:5] First they have a Signature different from others, which arises from an Inward Birth-Ground, more pure and clarified, that gives a quick and sharp understanding, to comprehend from the Center-line of Life, that runs into God's deep free, and does not stick nor stay; but pierce through as a breath of Air. That hereby it may be an ascendant above the order of these outward Stars, and inhabit in the Circling *Eye* as a close student. And may there from its Light-Glance, as an Eye in that *Eye*, read the Trinity Book, in which the Rules of the Magia are expressed apart. Without which nothing can ever of this Nature come to be understood: therefore we must be caught up into this Theosophical *Eye* by that Life-line of the Spirit, who has taken hold to fetch up our Spirits from this Muddy Shore, which has put out the Magical *Eye*.

[3F 20:6] By this attractive Stone that shines so bright upon the Face of our Mind, we may come to learn a New Alphabet, and to forsake the Old Natural Philosophy, learned from the Schools of this World. For this purpose the *Eye* of Love has looked down upon the Magical Ground that is known unto him, to stir the Heavenly Matter that has been under the strong binding powers of the harsh and bitter qualities of the Outward Birth. Now called up is the Spirit, whose Original is from the Magical Ground: to hear and learn what will it free. If it be able to agree in all points hereunto, then a High Magus he shall be in God's *Theosophical Eye*. This is the Counsel from God revealed, and therefore to be revealed one to another.

### December 20, 1678 The Rules that are taught in Wisdom's School

[3F 20:7] §.THE drawing power of the Holy Anointing, being come to give further Rules, to proceed forward in the study of the first ground of Divine Philosophy, through which the present Deplorable State may be overturned, whereby the Mortal Dust may be turned into the Gold of Ophir. Which will make good that ancient Prophecy in *Isaiah*, *That Man shall be as refined Gold of Ophir*. Oh, where has this great Secret been hid? And how is it that none have been found worthy of so many Ages, to find the entrance into the Eternal Magical Eye, though Christ the Lord has made the way, yet the World of Mortals continue at a stay. But it must not be always thus and forever. Wisdom's Theater must be known by her own that are Born Again anew. For the Age of the World is far spent, therefore a *Solomon's Day* must be expected: in which Wisdom shall flourish from the Life-Magical Tree, whom all Nations shall come to for shelter.

[3F 20:8] But it may be asked: *Where is the ground for this Life-Tree to take its rooting new again?* The Answer is ready: Search each one, and no longer be ignorant of the Seed-Pearl that lies smoth-

ered in the low and deep valley, of a renewed Earth. Its Life by one Magical Breath may soon be blown up. Therefore let us not stay for a future time: for the Holy One hastens us to come to the Circle-Mount, where Wisdom has her *School* Erected. It is a place remote from all the common earthly structures, where Mortal Essences dwell, which make mutinies and noises, in and about the traffics of this Lower Region. Therefore all here are quiet and still: nothing to be heard, but what tends to the promotion and advancement of learning in the *Theosophical Art*. This is one considerable Rule to be observed, in order to the deep Process which is to follow.

### Rules for Advancement in the Theosophical Art

[3F 20:9] §.The *First Rule*: The Mind and Heart is to be the Separated Place, or *Holy Island*, according to that Scripture, the Multitude of *Islands* shall wait for the Word of the Lord to be revealed unto them. That is, every individual holy prepared Spirit and Heart shall become Wisdom's spring of Holy Understanding, and Theater: Where in the diversity of her Proverbs they will become knowing. Therefore be waiting in this School.

[3F 20:10] §.The *Second Rule* given forth as a Law from this University was: That whosoever enter themselves Students here, should not go out, till they had taken *all Degrees*, and come up to the full point of the Supernal Philosophy. For this School is not for any such, as stand divided and wavering in their minds, between Two Worlds. There must be a Resolution taken to stick to *One* only Study. Then we may be entered, as New-Born in this High and Celestial University: Where an Infinitem of Magia may be understood.

[3F 20:11] §.The *Third Rule* brings us to the first of the Alphabet, which is the beginning of that Name ALPHA: For this is the First Number. We are to find out God's Name, both in *Unity* and *Diversity*. The two first letters we have received, as the first Rule to go upon: A.L., which signifies the whole Number or *Unity*; from where the generating Spirit proceeds and opens itself into *Variety*: piercing and begetting itself in Nature's Properties, in order to its restitution. And this is from the A.L: to which we may add the mighty Creating *Fiat*. That now is the beginning of a new Creation, and the end of the old. Who has been, and is to be known, by that Name I AM: and whatever is not found here must molder and die. For in the ALPHA the model of a New World is formed. From which we learn that the *Alpha* is calling that which belongs to the Heavenly World: that so the good essences, that have been troubled by the jarring Elements might now pass, through the separating Fire, to their own Mother-Element; wherefrom it may be brought forth again, in another consideration, so that it may be consisting with the I AM: As having the pure Theosophical matter consubstantiated in, and through, the generating property of the Eternal Spirit.

[3F 20:12] Now from this we see what we are to learn, to wit, to *Spell Out* the beginning of God's *Name*, that will bring one to the Magical Art. Whoever can draw this Number-Figure upon their Heart and Mind, they will soon expel the venom of the Serpent's Sting, which has got therein, to infect the whole part. No other Spell but this Name will ever cure Mortal Man. Through whom the incorporating Power of this Name will run as burning Gold: that all the Waters from the troubled Sea of Nature, can never quench it. For it is of that high and pure quality, as it drinks up all contrarities, and devours them. When this Mystery is well learned and understood as to become practiced from the Intrinsic sense and feeling of it, then we are come to the very ground-matter of the Supernatural Philosophy: Then it will be very easy to reduce and sublime, that which has lain in Putrefaction: and all Impotencies, Weakness, and Imperfections will be from this infallibly recovered to Strength and Perfection.



[3F 20:13] §.The *Fourth Rule*: But before we can attain to this high work, we are to be exercised in the manifold *Acts of Faith*, as another Rule preceding hereunto. For if the true right Magical Ground be broken up in us, then it will first come to put forth the pure *single Acts of Faith* in the *Alpha-Name*, without mixing the least contrary Grain with it. No other Letters must be joined with the A.L. And the I am will be All the mark in the Eye. For the Bow of Faith will fly to the *Circle-Eye*.

[3F 20:14] §.The *Fifth Rule*: Before we can reach to Wisdom's Center, it is revealed, that of necessity, our Outward Man must sink that Degenerated Name Adam, with all the woe and misery it has brought in with it. But so strong is the circle of this sensitive Nature, that it may properly be objected, *The outward Spirit, without the power of working miracles, cannot get out; there are so many hangers on, that claim Alliance with him, while appearing on this Mortal State*. Now as to this the only remedy prescribed, is that we learn to die out of every Letter in *Adam's Name*. And how is this to be effected, but by the awakening those living Essences of Faith, which have power to enter into *God's Name*. Then Faith has got into its stronghold, where no subtle arguments of reason shall bear sway, to make and raise questions, doubts, and contradictions, to this all-working Power of the God-Mighty Name JEHOVAH. Now then, it is all expedient to abide yet a while under the teaching, nurturing, Spirit of Faith, which verily is a Purifying State, that will make us meet to enter among Wisdom's deep Practitioners of *Supernatural Philosophy*.

[3F 20:15] The *Sixth Rule*: But before we can here come, we are to remain in the *School of Faith* with the *Outward Man*, and there learn the high Rules of Faith, which are annexed to the high Magia Divine. Not to mention here those lower acts, which the leaden plummet of sense pulls down again: so frequently mingling those gross metals of Sense and Reason, with this pure Gold of Faith. And so this has made it as a drug: and it is set light by. Because it is not of that currant kind, that will pass through the Probation Fires, that of several kinds are prepared to examine it by, in the very way, before we can come to *Wisdom's Land*, where the Springs of *Gold* overflow.

[3F 20:16] §.The *Seventh Rule*: Query: *What is the first high Rule of Faith that the Outward Man must learn, that must admit of no Drug of Sense?* §.Answ. It is the Faith of the Son of God, the pure quintessence of His Name, burning as a Flame, that is a Spirit that springs from the Eternal Central-Being of God, come down into Nature, to change and renew, by the Spirit of Faith: that draws one strait line from this Invisible Sphere to the Invisible Principality of *Sophia*.

[3F 20:17] §.The *Eighth Rule*: Or, *Second high Rule of Faith, to the outward and inward Man is this that follows*. It has been clearly shown to me, that now are required those clear and pure Acts of Faith, that must have no props to lean upon, either on this hand, or that; but must venture upon the greatest perils, and in no wise be daunted, keeping steady to the strait *Line* of Faith: which was shown to me by way of Similitude (*See this December 24*). And so we are to become tractable to the Pass of Faith, that will land us in that all Wealthy Land, where all complaints are silenced. And verily this, and no other, is the way for the outward Man: as the Unction of the Father has been very clear and plain; which would stir up our pure minds hereunto.

[3F 20:18] §.The *Ninth Rule*: Or, *Third High Rule of Faith, for the Outward and Inward Man to walk in is to know*, That the pure quint-essences of Faith are so pure, subtle, and thin, as they can (nor will) fear none ill; but look all famine, nakedness, scorn, and reproach out of countenance: Because it does not act now upon an object only *without* itself; but upon and from the *Essential Name* of the *Alpha*, that springs as Golden Oil, that makes Faith run swift and smooth, to *incorporate* with the object itself. That so there may be a constant stock to employ Faith's out-going Acts upon: Which

will bring in good returns from *Wisdom's* Land. We have no just cause to mistrust the Revenue there. If our Faith were grown to this ripeness, from God the Essential Ground, we then should know what is our own within those Magical Walls of her rich Territory, where Princess *Wisdom* stands ready prepared for Faith's Conquerors. This Word of Counsel and Charge is from the Holy One, that we do not adventure without this Rule.

[3F 20:19] §.The *Tenth Rule*: Or, *Fourth High Rule of Faith is this*: That we venture upon the *Narrow Bridge* of Faith, without fear or reluctance. For it is the direct Way or Pass into that Wealthy Place, where the very *substance* of things hoped for shall be all fully entered upon, as the due reward of Faith. Let us therefore make it our whole living. For what is so pleasing to our God? It wins His Heart. We make Him our own, that we may be in the way of all freedom with *our God*, in all Spiritual blessings. Even so: *Amen*.

**December 22, 1678**  
**SOLOMON**

[3F 20:20] §.THE Word of Life thus spoke: Though you are yet in the multiplicity of thoughts, yet Wisdom is in the inward parts, to detect the superfluous rising of them. And therefore enter into the Secret of her Pavilion, and there you must hear and learn profound *Proverbs*. And they shall be plain unto you, though Dark Sayings to the vagrant that are roving up and down from her discipline. But heed and watch; for the Breath that is so moving, what is it but the rich Dew, that will give moisture to the ground that is hungry for the Fruitful Birth of God. Which has been hid in nature, as an Eternal Grain, but now is expiated for the interpretation of that one great sentential Proverb that none could ever understand, till *Solomon* comes to be Born Again. Then you may expect the enclosure to be taken away, that has caused the Heavenly Things to stand at a stay; But the clouds dispersing are.

**December 24, 1678**  
**The Narrow Bridge**

### **A Parabolical Explication of the Eighth and Tenth Rules of the Theosophical Art**

[3F 20:21] §.This night I beheld by my interior sight a *River*, over which I was to pass. For beyond it there was a rich Planted Land, where all necessaries were provided to entertain those, who could come there. There was no working, nor toil: the Inhabitants had *Rest*. Thus I was discoursed (as I stood in the sight of this River) by voice: but saw no Man. Then I considered how I might yet pass over: for there was no Boat; and the River was deep. I was very desirous to get over, but had none to help me: for it was a Solitary Place, where no resort was. So I sat down, resolving a while to wait, whether I might see any means for to pass over. I found my Spirit in a Praying posture, as having Faith that God would make way. And suddenly there was a *Line* stretched over this River, by the appearance of One being in White Raiment. Which One was on the other side of the River, and cried to me to Venture upon this Line, for it was strong enough to bear me.

[3F 20:22] The Line was very thick, and White as Milk. But when I saw this must be the way of my pass, I was in great jeopardy: and debated whether or not I should adventure to walk upon it. But still the Voice from the other side cried, *Fear not to come: there is a Wall on each side, which will keep from all peril, though you cannot see it. For it is Magical, and not to be visible, till you have first set Faith's Foot upon the Line. Then you shall it see.*

[3F 20:23] Then I desired Him to get my Faith up hereunto, which yet was not strong enough. Then I bethought myself of my Friend and Fellow-Traveler in the narrow tract of the Spirit, that I would advise with about this adventure, to see whether he would encourage me. And immediately he came to me, and was very forward to go upon the Line first: but not being skillful in the Magia, began to totter. Then a Word spoke in me, *Go a little apart, and consult the Mystery of this Pass. For who can walk upon this Line, till they have fully learned their Magical part?* Whereupon we were counseled to attend the Wise Sentential Proverb, who would perfect us in this Art, which was opened to be the Root and Spring-birth of Wisdom: from where numerous Proverbs, highly profound, would be given us, to learn our Magical part by.

[3F 20:24] §.N.B. With these *Theosophical Rules* do Harmonize the *Laws of the High and Holy Calling*, that are to be observed by those that are admitted into the Paradisical Land: which Laws are inserted into the little Prophetical Treatise of *The Ark of Faith*;<sup>13</sup> which are there represented as the *Fundamental Laws and Constitutions* of the New KINGDOM, or New WORLD.

FINIS

---

<sup>13</sup> SDV Note: Original Book: *The Tree of Faith with its Supplement the Ark of Faith*, pg. 20, 1696. SDV AR 11-1 thru 7.